The English Grammar for Communication

Unit 1. Types of Questions

Unit 2. Present Simple and Present Progressive

Unit 3. Present Perfect and Present Perfect Progressive

Unit 4. Past Simple and Past Progressive

Unit 5. Past Perfect and Past Perfect Progressive

Unit 6. Future Simple and Future Progressive

Unit 7. Future Perfect and Future Perfect Progressive

Unit 8. Active and Passive Voices

Unit 9. Sequence of Tenses

Unit 10. Reported (Indirect) Speech

Unit 11. Conditionals

Unit 12. Infinitive, Gerund and Participles

Unit 13. Prepositions
Unit 1. Types of Questions.

A. General Questions.
B. Special Questions
C. Alternative Questions.
D. Disjunctive or Tag Questions.

В английском языке существуют следующие основные типы вопросов; общие (General Questions), специальные (Special Questions), альтернативные (Alternative Questions), и разделительные (Disjunctive or Tag Questions).

Английское вопросительное предложение характеризуется обратным порядком слов.
- He is a student. Is he a student?
- He will come tomorrow. Will he come tomorrow?

N.B!!! Исключением являются специальные вопросы к подлежащему. В них сохраняется прямой порядок слов.
- Who took my pen?
- What is Jack?

B. General Questions.

Общие вопросы (General Questions) задаются с целью получить подтверждение или отрицание всей высказанной в вопросе мысли и, таким образом, требуют ответа Yes или No.

Общие вопросы произносятся с повышающейся интонацией, т.е. повышением голоса в конце предложения.

- -- Do you really love me?
  -- Yes, I do.

- -- Will you invite Mike to your birthday party?
  -- No, I won’t.
Порядок слов в общих вопросах:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>auxiliary or modal verb</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>objects and adverbial modifiers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>вспомогательный или модальный глагол</td>
<td>подлежащее</td>
<td>основной глагол</td>
<td>дополнения и обстоятельства</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>English?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>her?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>a book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>in Brest?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>received</td>
<td>a letter from her?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B!!! 1) Когда в состав сказуемого входят два или три вспомогательных глагола, то только первый из них ставится перед подлежащим:

- She has been playing the piano since morning.
  Has she been playing the piano since morning?

2) Если сказуемое выражено глаголами to be или to have в Present Simple или Past Simple, то эти глаголы ставятся перед подлежащим.

- Is he at home?
- Have you an English book?

3) Когда глагол to be употреблен в качестве глагола-связки, он ставится перед подлежащим, а именная часть сказуемого – непосредственно после подлежащего:

- She is a shop assistant.
  Is she a shop assistant?
Exercise 1. Put General questions to the following sentences:

1. I have dinner at home. 2. Ted came to see us today. 3. Nothing will be done until next week. 4. My aunt lives in Minsk. 5. She stood near the shop. 6. We shall be examining students tomorrow. 7. I`m going home soon. 8. They will have time to get there. 9. She is an experienced doctor. 10. He had to work late last night. 11. He forgot to mail the letter. 12. She advised me to wait until tomorrow. 13. He`ll give you my telephone number. 14. He drank lots of black coffee. 15. I`ve never eaten at that restaurant. 16. She found him smoking. 17. He is hiding in the woods near the house. 18. He does his work well. 19. Factories are built inside residential areas.

Exercise 2. Ask and answer yes/ no questions:

Sample: A: - He likes hockey.
B: - ................. football?
C: - Yes, he ...... (No, he ......)

Student A: He likes hockey. Student B: Does he like football?

Student C: Yes, he does. (No, he doesn’t)
1. She is reading.  --------------------------------------------- a book?
2. I speak English.  --------------------------------------------- Spanish?
3. They visited Rome.  --------------------------------------------- Berlin?
4. She wants to meet Jane.  --------------------------------------------- her husband?
5. I know Tom Smith.  --------------------------------------------- John Jackson?
6. He didn`t go out last night.  ---------------------------------- on Friday?
7. They`ve got two dogs.  -------------------------------------- any cats?
8. I`m going to the theatre.  -------------------------------------- on your own?
9. There is some tea in the cupboard.  ------------------------ any coffee?
10. Mother bought some bread.  -------------------------------- any butter?
11. The weather will be fine tomorrow.  ---------------------- on Sunday?
12. The job will be finished soon.  ----------------------------- before lunch?
13. The boy has gone out.  -------------------------------------- into town?
14. She told the news to Father.  ----------------------------- to her friends?
15. I read the story by Mark Twain.  -------------------------- all his stories?
16. Jane telephoned her friend from London.  ------------------ her parents?
17. I`ve spoken to my adviser.  ------------------------------ to the Dean
18. Helen has already left the hotel  ------------------------ the city?
19. The shopping center was a comfortable place to walk around in winter.  ----------------------------- in summer?
20. There were some cherry-trees in the garden.  ------------------ any apple-trees?

Exercise 3. Ask yes/ no questions. Use do, does, did, have, has, can, will and these words:

| Read | do | drive | wear | rain | have | go out | eat | fly | go |

Give true short answers.
Student A:  
Student B:  

- Do you read a lot of books?
- Yes, I do.

1. you/ a lot of books?
2. you/ last night?
3. your best friend/ a Ferrari?
4. you /ever/ Chinese food?
5. you/to the seaside next summer?
6. it/ a lot in your country?
7. you / a haircut last week?
8. you/ tennis?
9. your teacher/ glasses?
10. you /ever / in a helicopter?

**B. Special Questions**


“TO BE” – present, past simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>the news on television?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>you yesterday?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OTHER VERBS – present, past simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>auxiliary</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>know my name?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>miss the bus?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OTHER TENSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>auxiliary</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>been?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>leave?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>shouting?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MODALS – can, must, should, shall, might, may

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>modal</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>wear?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>know?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MODALS – have to, need to, be able to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>auxiliary</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>modal verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>have to go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>need to bring?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>able to come?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ответы на специальные вопросы даются полные с повторением всех членов предложения, логически необходимых для данного ответа.

- Where was he yesterday? - He was at home (yesterday).
- When did you last see him? - I saw him two days ago.

Note:
Questions (Who…?/What…?/Which…?) often end with preposition (to/ for/ about/ with etc.)
- What are you thinking about?
- Where is your friend from?


Student A: What is your name?

Student B: My name is Nick.
Exercise 2. Use these sentences to ask questions. Begin each sentence with the words given.

Student A:          Student B:

1. They may be listening to the music. (What)                                            ?
2. We should have visited our aunt long ago. (Whom)                                  ?
3. The doctor's bill ought to have been paid yesterday. (Whose)                      ?
4. He may have been working at the problem for a fortnight. (How long)              ?
5. We must accept the truth about ourselves. (Who)                                   ?
6. I had to take my examination last week. (When)                                     ?
7. The students should take their examinations twice a year. (How often)             ?
8. People can't afford wasting time. (Why)                                            ?
9. You ought to book a double room. (What room)                                      ?
10. Interpreters have to speak a foreign language well. (What ….to do well)         ?

Exercise 3. What do you think they asked? Use your imagination!

Student A:          Student B:

1. A: ……? B: A hamburger, please.
2. A: ……? B: At three o'clock. It was two minutes late.
3. A: ……? B: By plane – if I can get a ticket.
4. A: ……? B: In Australia. He’s been there for three years.
5. A: ……? B: The postman. He brought an express letter.
6. A: ……? B: Fantastic! We had seats in the front row.
8. A: ……? B: All my life – and I have never wanted to live anywhere else!
9. A: ……? B: Let’s go to France. I’ve never been there.

**Exercise 4.** Look at the answers. Ask questions with **What, Where, Why, Who, When, How** (some of them may be used more than once).

**Questions**

1. __________your name? -- My name is Nick.
2. __________the children? -- John’s in the garden and Silvia is in town.
3. __________I put on? -- Put on your blue trousers.
4. ________you come to the party? -- Because I wasn’t feeling well.
5. ________you get that pullover? -- Mum gave it to me for my birthday.
6. __________the parcel come? -- Yesterday. The postman brought it just before I went to work.
7. ________you spell Mississippi? -- I think M-I-S-S-I-S-S-I-P-P-I but you’d better look it up.
8. ________you get to the station? -- I went by taxi. I missed the bus.

**Remember!!!**

Вопросы к подлежащему (*Questions to the Subject*)

- начинаются с вопросительных местоимений **Who? What?**
- являются исключением т.к. в них сохраняется порядок слов повествовательного предложения.

In these questions **who** or **what** is the subject:

- **Who lives in the house?**
- **What happened?**
What’s burning?
Who has got my key?
In this question who or what is the object:
Who did you meet yesterday?
Who did she say?
Who are you phoning?
What was he wearing?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tomico</td>
<td>is painting Frank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe</td>
<td>wants to see Mr. Reed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karen</td>
<td>wrote to Gary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B. Don’t mix up!!!

**Asking about the Subject**

“Who is painting Frank?”
“Tomico.”
“Who wants to see Mr. Reed?”
“Joe.”
“Who wrote to Gary?”
“Karen”.

**Asking about the Object**

“Who is Tomico painting?”
“Frank”.
“Who does Joe want to see?”
“Mr. Reed”.
“Who did Karen write to?”
“Gary”.

**Exercise 5.** Here is a short text about freshers during the break. Ask and answer subject and object questions, using Who...? as in the model:

Gina is looking for Oscar. Oscar is talking to Nancy. Bernie is talking to James. Franco is playing table tennis with Carmen. Rob is waving to Yoshiko. Judy is looking at Marty. Marty is looking at himself in the mirror!

Student A: Who is looking for Oscar?  
Student B: Gina is looking for Oscar.
C. Alternative Questions.

Альтернативные вопросы (Alternative Questions) — это вопросы, которые подразумевают выбор между предметами, действиями, качествами и т.д. Они состоят из двух частей, объединенных союзом or.

Альтернативные вопросы по форме -- общие вопросы:
по содержанию -- специальные вопросы

1. Альтернативные вопросы требуют полных ответов.
   • -- Do you go in for tennis or football?
     -- I go in for tennis.
2. Когда альтернативный вопрос относится к подлежащему, то второму подлежащему всегда предшествует вспомогательный или модальный глагол. Такой вопрос требует краткого ответа.
   • -- Will you go there or will your sister?
     -- My sister will.
3. Альтернативные вопросы могут также начинаться с вопросительного слова. Такие вопросы состоят из специального вопроса и следующих за ним двух однородных членов предложения, соединенных “or”/
   • --Which do you like better: chocolate ice-cream or vanilla ice-cream?
Exercise 1. Respond using alternative questions given as prompts below.

Student A: I’ve bought a new book recently.

Student B: Is it in English or in Russian?

1. Yesterday I visited a new supermarket.
2. I’m fond of music.
3. I’m a student now.
4. I’ve bought a nice pair of shoes this week.
5. The Wilsons moved to a new house some time ago.

Prompts:
Are you in your first or second year?
Is it at the town edge or in the town centre?
Is it made of brick or timber?
Are you fond of pop music or of classical music?
Are the cheap or expensive?

Exercise 2. Ask and answer alternative questions.

- Is he smoking a pipe or a cigarette? – He is smoking a pipe.

Student A. Student B.

1. A: __________________?
   B: My brother lives in Minsk. (Kiev)
2. A:__________________?
   B:  His son is ten years old. (twelve years)
3. A:__________________?
   B:  Peter is from Far Est. (the West)
4. A:__________________
   B:  Her husband is an engineer. (a teacher)
5. A:__________________?
   B:  She has a small family. (large)
6. A: __________________?
   B: There is an apple on the plate. ( on the table )

7. A: __________________?
   B: There are three rooms in his flat. ( only one room )

8. A: __________________?
   B: This is a map of Africa. ( Asia )

9. A: __________________?
   B: We often go out in the evening. ( morning )

10. A: ________________?
    B: The bedrooms are on the second floor. ( first )

11. A: ________________?
    B: The Browns live in Bishopton. ( London )

12. A: ________________?
    B: Every week they discuss a new film. ( play )

**Exercise 3.** Ask alternative questions to match the answers. Use the words given in the box:

**Student A.**

Is he a teacher of Spanish or English?

**Student B.**

He is a teacher of English.

---

1. Spanish / 2 raisins / 3 a historical novel / 4 papering the walls / 5 single / 6 bacon and eggs / 7 one / 8 writing-desk / 9 translating a text / 10 four / 11 going to cook supper / 12 by sea

---

1. -- He is a teacher of English.
2. – I like ice-cream with strawberries.
3. – I would like to read a love story.
4. – The Browns are painting the ceiling.
5. – My uncle is married.
6. – I would like to have a sandwich.
7. --They have two dogs in the house.
8. – The dictionary is on the bookshelf.
9. – The students are doing grammar exercises.
10.– There are three passengers in the compartment.
11.– They are eating out tonight.
12.– I would like to travel by air.
Разделительный вопрос (Disjunctive or Tag Question) представляет собой утвердительное или отрицательное повествовательное предложение, к которому присоединен краткий общий вопрос, состоящий из вспомогательного или модального глагола, который входит в состав сказуемого повествовательного предложения и соответствующего местоимения в именительном падеже.

N.B!!! Если первая часть вопроса имеет утвердительную форму, то вторая часть – отрицательную.
Если же первая часть представляет собой отрицательное предложение, то вторая часть будет в утвердительной форме.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>positive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You like it,</td>
<td>don’t you?</td>
<td>She doesn’t look well,</td>
<td>does she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I gave it to you,</td>
<td>didn’t I?</td>
<td>It didn’t hurt,</td>
<td>did it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s upstairs,</td>
<td>isn’t he?</td>
<td>They aren’t Scottish,</td>
<td>are they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’ve got a pet,</td>
<td>haven’t</td>
<td>I haven’t told you,</td>
<td>have I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can borrow it,</td>
<td>you?</td>
<td>She mustn’t touch it,</td>
<td>must she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have to go,</td>
<td>can’t I?</td>
<td>She doesn’t have to go,</td>
<td>does he?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Необходимо помнить при ответах на разделительные вопросы, что существует расхождение в употреблении Yes и No в английском языке и Да и Нет в русском языке.
You read newspapers, don’t you?
• Yes, I do. – Да, читаю.
• No, I don’t. – Нет, не читаю.

You don’t read newspapers, do you?
• Yes, I do. – Нет, читаю.
• No, I don’t. – Да, не читаю.
Study the following table!

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. “It is/ This is “</td>
<td>“isn`t it?”</td>
<td><strong>This is</strong> a good flat, <strong>isn`t it?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. “There is/ are”</td>
<td>“isn<code>t/ aren</code>t there?”</td>
<td><strong>There are</strong> two rooms in your flat, <strong>aren`t there?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. “I am” “I am not”</td>
<td>“ aren`t I?” “am I?”</td>
<td><strong>I am</strong> right, <strong>aren`t I?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. “I used to”</td>
<td>“didn`t I”</td>
<td><strong>He used to eat</strong> a lot of sweets, <strong>didn`t he?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Imperative</td>
<td>“Will you/won`t you?”</td>
<td><strong>Close</strong> the door please, <strong>will you/won<code>t you?** **Don</code>t interrupt</strong> me, <strong>will you?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. “Let`s”</td>
<td>“shall we?”</td>
<td><strong>Let`s forget it</strong>, <strong>shall we?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. “Let me/him/her”,etc</td>
<td>“will you/ won`t you?”</td>
<td><strong>Let me buy</strong> some sweets, <strong>will you/won`t you?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. “don<code>t” “doesn</code>t” “won`t” “do you?” “does he?” “will you?”</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>You don<code>t swim**, **do you?** **You won</code>t be late</strong>, <strong>will you?</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9.</strong> “I have got”</td>
<td>“haven`t I”</td>
<td><strong>He has got</strong> a large house, hasn`t he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10.</strong> “You have”</td>
<td>“don`t you?”</td>
<td><strong>You have dinner</strong> at 3 o<code>clock, don</code>t you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11.</strong> Everyone/ someone/ anyone/ no one</td>
<td>“auxiliary verb + they?”</td>
<td><strong>Everyone knows</strong> about it, don`t they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 1.** Ask disjunctive questions.

Example: There is a plate on the table. - There is a plate on the table, isn`t there?

1. There are no glasses on the table.
2. There are six chairs at the table.
3. There are two forks and knives on the table.
4. There are no young men at table.
5. You have got some new cups.
6. The students are in the hall.
7. This is a good fountain pen.
8. My father is not at home now.
9. Let`s go to the party tonight.
10. Don`t be late.
11. We could turn down the road.
12. She is perfectly willing to listen to reason.
13. There was no national election last month.
**Exercise 2.** Match question tags with the following statements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>Tag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It isn`t cold</td>
<td>A) ...did you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The police caught him</td>
<td>B) ...isn`t it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You stole it</td>
<td>C) ...aren`t we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They won`t tell anyone</td>
<td>D) ...aren`t they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It`s Thursday today</td>
<td>E)...didn`t they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There`s no proof</td>
<td>F)...is it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You didn`t say that</td>
<td>G)...can you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They should be late</td>
<td>H)...doesn`t he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You`ve got two sisters</td>
<td>I)...didn`t you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He`s spoken to her</td>
<td>J)...is there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They aren`t French</td>
<td>K)...shouldn`t they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please help me</td>
<td>L)...hasn`t he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The`re working hard</td>
<td>M)...will they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He loves you</td>
<td>N)...are they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We`re late</td>
<td>O)...haven`t you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 3.** Inspector Gray has just stopped Harry Nose, a well-known bank robber. Complete his questions and add Harry`s answers.

**G:** Harry Nose! You know me, don`t you? **H:** Yes, I do.
**G:** This isn`t your car, ...... ? **H:** ...... .
**G:** You stole it, ......? **H:** ...... .
**G:** You are not telling me the truth, ......? **H:** ...... .
**G:** You`ve just come back from Hull, ...... ? **H:** ...... .
**G:** And there were two other people with you, ......? **H:** ...... .
**G:** So you don`t know anything about the bank robbery there last night, ......?

**H:** ...... .
**G:** And it wasn`t you who robbed the bank, ......? **H:** ...... .
**G:** I suppose you`ve got a good alibi, ......? **H:** ...... .
**G:** What is it then?
**H:** Well, Inspector. I only came out of prison this morning!

**TEST.**

**TASK I.** Put questions to the words in bold type:
1) I am looking at him.
2) Petrov is a doctor.
3) They are talking about the international situation.
4) They are painters.
5) That is my sister’s dog.
6) Some English books are lying on the table.
7) The children are sitting under the tree.
8) He is waiting for me.
9) Mr. A. called you up.
10) We saw Mr. A. yesterday.
11) That man is Ivanov.
12) That book is mine.
13) I bought some red pencils yesterday.
14) These boys are my brothers.
15) May is the fifth month of the year.
16) I rang up my sister.
17) The dining room is the largest room in our house.
18) The handbag is made of leather.
19) The man asked for a cup of tea.
20) He has bought a gold watch.
21) He dictated the letter to the secretary.
22) This telegram is from my father.
23) Mathematics is the most difficult subject that I study.

**TASK II.** Read the story about Samuel Johnson, the famous English writer and author of the famous Dictionary of the English Language. Ask questions of different types so as to cover the contents.

From time to time Samuel Johnson liked to do his shopping himself. One day he went to a fish market to buy some fish for his dinner. He asked a fishwoman for a fresh trout but the trout she showed to his didn’t look fresh at all, and he didn’t want to take it. This made the fishwoman very angry and she shouted some rude words at Johnson. In answer he called her a verb, a noun, an adjective and an adverb. The fishwoman didn’t know these words, but she was sure they were rude ones, and they made her angrier than ever.

**TASK IV.** Translate into English.

1. Вы решили, где будете проводить каникулы?
2. Сколько тебе было лет, когда ты начал учить французский?
3. Когда будет опубликована твоя статья о проблемах окружающей среды?
4. Кто эта девушка, которую мы вчера встретили в театре?
5. В каждой семье есть свои секреты. Кому ты можешь доверить свои?
6. Что у нас сегодня на десерт: фрукты или мороженое?
8. Посмотри! Идет сильный снег. Давай останемся дома, хорошо?
9. Когда он уезжает в Западную Европу? Он еще не решил.
10. Почему ты не сказал, что у нас нет хлеба?
11. Не лги мне, хорошо? Куда он уехал?
12. Гид предложил туристам поездку в Ноттингем или в Лондон?
13. Вы ждали меня в 5 часов? Да ждал.
14. Сейчас вечер. Почему ты пьешь так много кофе?
15. Они сейчас смотрят телевизор или слушают музыку?
16. Дождь вчера шел целый день, не так ли?
17. Мы собираемся пойти в кино, если купим билеты?
18. Куда ты ходишь чаще: в кино или на концерты?
Unit 2. Present Simple and Present Progressive

A. **Present Simple**

B. **Present Progressive**

C. **Stative Verbs**

A. **Present Simple**

Настоящее простое время

Study the following rules of the formation of the Present Simple tense. Ask questions, if any.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Утвердительная форма</th>
<th>Отрицательная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительно-отрицательная форма</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I read</td>
<td>I do not read</td>
<td>I do</td>
<td>I don’t do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>We do not</td>
<td>Do we read?</td>
<td>Don’t we read?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>You do not</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>They do not</td>
<td>They</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She reads</td>
<td>He/She does not read</td>
<td>He/She</td>
<td>He/She doesn’t read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It reads</td>
<td>It does not</td>
<td>It</td>
<td>It doesn’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remember!** The third person Singular is formed with the help of the ending –s: work – works, drive – drives, run – runs, play – plays (BUT: if –y is preceded by a consonant, –y is changed into –i and –es is added: study – studies, fly – flies)

- -s is changed to –es if verbs end in:
  1) –o: do – does, go – goes;
Основные случаи употребления
Present Simple употребляется для обозначения:
1 Регулярно повторяющегося действия в настоящем времени. При этом часто употребляются наречия: usually, sometimes, often, always, seldom, rarely или словосочетания: every month, every day, every year, etc.

Usually he comes home at 7 o’clock.
She sometimes helps her friends.
We see each other every day.

2 Универсальных истин – того, что является верным при любых обстоятельствах.

Spring comes after winter.
The sun rises in the East.

3 Постоянного действия.
She lives in Minsk.
My father works at this factory.

4 Действия, которое является частью программы, расписания.
The Queen arrives in Spain on Tuesday.
The train leaves at 9 a.m.

5 Действия, выраженного глаголами, не употребляющимися в the Present Progressive Tense (to love, to like, to see, etc.)

I see a picture.
I know what you mean.

Exercise 1. Make up sentences from the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mr. Brown</th>
<th>always</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>the flat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>a car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>tennis on Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>seldom</td>
<td>clean</td>
<td>to the skating rink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>every day</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>lunch at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>usually</td>
<td>translate</td>
<td>at an office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td>these documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane</td>
<td>every week</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>poems in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My friends</td>
<td>rarely</td>
<td>drive</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>once a week</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>TV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Exercise 2.** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. Every day Ann (to drive) her kids to school.
2. I usually (to watch) TV in the evening.
3. They always (to spend) their holidays in the country.
4. On Sundays she (to go) to the swimming pool.
5. Mark often (to wear) a hat.
6. You seldom (to do) your homework.
7. Mary never (to arrive) on time.
8. It often (to rain) here in autumn.
9. We always (to help) our mother.
10. They seldom (to go) to the theater.
11. I (to learn) the English language at the university.
12. Miss Jones never (to have) dinner at home.
13. Jane rarely (to do) the morning exercises.
14. This shop (to close) at 6 o’clock.
15. Tom (to have) a shower every morning.

**Exercise 3.** Make the sentences negative and interrogative. Do it to the following scheme.

**Eg.** He always gets up early.

1. Tom speaks German very well.
2. Joan knows my telephone number.
3. They often play chess.
4. I like to ride a bike.
5. We eat bacon and eggs for breakfast.
6. The exhibition opens on Monday.
7. Jane always keeps her promise.
8. The pupils usually raise their hands when they want to answer.
9. Mr. Black seldom travels by plane.
10. They go in for sport to keep fit.

**Exercise 4.** Say what you (your friend) do (does), don’t do (doesn’t do).

I get up at 8 a.m. What about your friend?

My friend also gets up at 8 a.m.
1 to go to the university by tram;
2 to know a lot of English words;
3 to read a lot of books in German;
4 to prepare lessons in the reading hall;
5 to have breakfast at 9 o’clock;
6 to listen to the teacher attentively;
7 to buy tickets to the cinema in advance;
8 to do shopping on Saturday;
9 to come from the university at 2 o’clock in the afternoon;
10 to attend the lectures regularly.
11 to collect stamps;
12 to like vegetables;
13 to stay at home in the evenings;
14 to ride a bike when it is warm;
15 to get excellent marks.

Exercise 5. Make up sentences from the given words.

1. granny/often/in/go/the/see/evening/my/to/I.
2. club/sometimes/a/on/we/Saturday to/disco/go.
3. thinks/always/Mary’s/work/late/boss/is/for/she.
4. people/happy/money/make/doesn’t.
5. in/film/Meryl Streep/superb/is/acting/truly.
6. lot/vegetables/useful/contain/vitamins/a/of.
7. in/and/numbers/avenues/names/New York/have/the/instead/only/of/streets.
8. who/are/they/always/help/to/believe/doctors/are/ready/people/ill.
9. a/Mary/deal/people/time/television/spend/great/of/watching.
10. to/wants/invite/conference/you/he/Mr. Black/to.

Exercise 6. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate verb.

Boil; close; cost; cost; go; have; like; open; smoke; speak; teach.

1. She is very clever. She …… four languages.
2. Steve……… ten cigarettes a day.
3. We usually …… dinner at 7 o’clock.
4. I …… films. I often……… to the cinema.
5. Water …………… at 100 degrees Celsius.
6. In Britain the banks …………… at 9.30 in the morning.
7. The City Museum …………… at 5 o’clock every evening.
8. Food is expensive. It …………… a lot of money.
9. Shoes are expensive. They ………… much money.
10. Tina is a teacher. She ……… Mathematics to young children.

Exercise 7. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Многие студенты первого курса посещают библиотеку два раза в неделю.
2. Она не часто пишет своим друзьям в Америку.
3. Ее друг занимается английским языком каждое утро?
4. Вечером мы обычно ходим гулять или смотрим телевизор.
5. Некоторые студенты проводят свои каникулы в студенческих лагерях?
6. Он не любит много света в комнате.
7. Она работает над своей дипломной работой каждый день?
8. Летом мы всегда ездим к своим родственникам в деревню.
9. Каждое лето абитуриенты сдают вступительные экзамены.
10. Студенты нашей группы активно принимают участие в жизни университета.
11. Каждый год к нам приезжают студенты на практику из Англии.
12. Я не читаю английские книги в оригинале.
13. Учиться никогда не поздно.
14. Обычно они ходят за покупками в выходные дни.
15. Искусство делает людей лучше и добрее.

Exercise 8. Put the verbs into the correct form.

In many parts of the world there (to be) mountains that (to seem) to smoke. The mountains that (to erupt) are called volcanoes. The hot rock that (to pour) out of the opening is called lava. Lava (to harden) before it has flowed very far. Most of the rock dust (to flow) down near the opening. When a volcano (to send) out hot rock we (to say) that it is erupting. Every time a volcano (to erupt), it (to become) higher. Every volcano (to have) a great “saucer” at the top. This “saucer” is called a crater. When a volcano has been quiet for many years, we (to call) it a dead volcano. But a :dead” volcano may suddenly become active.
**Present Progressive**

Настоящее длительное время

Present Progressive образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to be** и неизменяемой части – причастия I смыслового глагола.

- go – going
- play - playing

**TO BE** + V-ing (причастие)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Утвердительная форма</th>
<th>Отрицательная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительная форма</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am working</td>
<td>I am not working</td>
<td>Am I working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He is working</td>
<td>He is not working</td>
<td>Is he working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is working</td>
<td>She is not working</td>
<td>Is she working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is working</td>
<td>It is not working</td>
<td>it is working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are working</td>
<td>We are not working</td>
<td>Are we working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are working</td>
<td>You are not working</td>
<td>Are you working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are working</td>
<td>They are not working</td>
<td>they are working?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remember!**

- come – coming
- run – running
- lie – lying
- smoke – smoking
- sit – sitting
- die – dying

**Основные случаи употребления**

**Present Progressive употребляется:**

1 Для выражения действия, происходящего в данный момент. При этом часто употребляются обстоятельства времени: *now, at the moment, at present, at this time.*

   *Don’t go out now. It is raining.*
   *He is sleeping at the moment.*

2 Для выражения временного действия, происходящего в какой-то определенный период в настоящем.

   *We are living in a hotel until we can find a house to buy.*

3 Для выражения действия, которое является постоянной привычкой.

   *I am wearing a hat when it is too sunny.*

4 Для выражения действий, намеченных на ближайшее будущее, запланированных.

   *He is leaving tomorrow. His train is at 8.30.*
5 Для выражения меняющейся или развивающейся ситуации.
*It is getting colder.*

6 Для выражения действий, которые вызывают раздражение или недовольство говорящим.
*She is constantly talking at the lesson.*

**Exercise 1.** Put the verbs into the Present Progressive Tense.

1. He (to wear) a suit now.
2. She always (to say) lies.
3. Conditions of life in big cities (to change) from year to year.
4. Our class (to get) ready for a two-day walking trip.
5. I (to expect) a letter from my pen-friend.
6. The events (to develop) very fast.
7. Look! Jane (to cross) the road.
8. We (to draw) pictures for the wall newspaper at the moment.
9. What you (to argue) about?
10. I hope I (not to interfere).
11. Father is busy. He (to read) a very important report.
12. What you (to defend) yourself against?
13. Don’t go out! It (to rain) hard.
14. You (to enjoy) this party?
15. He (to do) research in chemistry.

**Exercise 2.** Make sentences negative and interrogative as in the example.
Eg. *He is learning a poem now.*

1. She is multiplying these numerals at the moment.
2. They are constantly talking at the lecture.
3. You are checking the results of the test.
4. They are developing a new system at the moment.
5. The teacher is discussing the results of the grammar test at the moment.
6. Look at him! He is trying to prove the theorem.
7. They are very busy. They are constructing a new machine.
8. Don’t enter the classroom. The professor is examining the students.
9. I am having a German lesson now.
10. Peter is translating the article in the reading room.

**Exercise 3.** Fill in the gaps with the appropriate verb.

*cross; discuss; go; rain; talk; dictate; have; read; pronounce; look; listen; sell; look; work; enjoy.*

1. He …….. newspapers at the corner of the street now.
2. We …….. a new project now.
3. We …….. to the movies tonight with our friends.
4. The Browns …….. to the Smiths in the sitting-room.
5. You …….. too fast.
6. Police …….. for the stolen car.
7. I think I not …….. your name correctly.
8. He …….. the Times at the moment.
9. It …….. cats and dogs.
10. I …….. for my lighter. I can’t find it.
11. They …….. their French class at the moment.
12. We …….. at the translation from English into Russian now.
13. Look! Jane …….. the street.
14. Mrs. Smith …….. to a concert on the radio.
15. He …….. this party very much.

**Exercise 4.** Answer the questions using the words given in brackets.

Eg. **Who is getting ready for the party? (they)**

*They are getting ready for the party.*

1. Who is checking the results? (the students)
2. Who is performing this operation? (a post-graduate)
3. Who is developing these ideas? (a group of scientists)
4. Who is asking you all these questions? (our teacher)
5. Who is showing them the new library? (we)
6. Who is speaking to you? (Mrs. Brown)
7. Where is he attending the conference? (at the Institute of Mechanics)
8. What is he speaking about? (her report)
9. When are you going to begin the project? (next month)
10 How are they performing this operation? (with the help of a computer)
11 What is your sister doing? (discuss an important problem)
12 What are they doing now? (hold a conference)
13 Who is developing these methods at the laboratory? (they)
14 What is she studying? (the results of the experiment)
15 What are the boys doing? (install a new program)

**Exercise 5.** Make up sentences from the given words.

1 station/our/at/we/are/guests/meeting/the.
2 officer/a/for/bags/looking/is/our/custom’s.
3 schools/on/first/September/pupils/are/and/colleges/there/the/of/students/and/to/going
4 their/for/are/plans/they/tomorrow/discussing.
5 away/now/are/anywhere/going/you?
6 still/his/he/students/examining/is.
7 for/looking/still/are/them/the/police.
8 considering/question/is/this/committee/the/still?
9 recent/widely/on/the/press/the/is/President’s/commenting/statement.
10 over/they/trifles/constantly/are/arguing.
11 moment/she/with/is/her/at/living/the/daughter/married.
12 are/the/dangerous/environmental/discussing/the/problems/scientists/most.
13 blowing/is/cold/the/gloomy/is/and/day/wind.
14 really/we/busy/are/time/having/a.
15 in/are/so/we/working/exams/am/I/taking/two/hard/months.

**Exercise 6.** Open the brackets, put the verbs into the correct form.

How our little planet (to live) nowadays? What problems it (to face) and what problems the Earthmen (to face)? As a result of the technological progress and great needs of the peoples in minerals and water the face of the Earth (to change) day by day and not to the good.

What problems the peoples of the five continents (to discuss) now? The principle problem (to be) the classical one – War and Peace problem. The discussions on this problem (to take) place on all levels here and everywhere on our planet. State political leaders and scientists as well as common people of the five continents (to think) day and night about one and the same – “peace and war”. They (to think) over this problem inside their states and out, north and south, east and west from
every point of view. This problem is exactly what we think about it – next world war may well be the end of our planet.

Exercise 7. Look at the pictures and describe them, using the expressions given in the box.

1 to play golf 2 to explain a new rule 3 to show the right way 4 to work on computer 5 to gather the harvest 6 to play baseball 7 to go to the office 8 to install a new programme 9 to take a cat home 10 to rain 11 to discuss a new project 12 to sail

C. Stative Verbs

Study the following rules about Stative verbs.

В английском языке существует ряд глаголов, которые не употребляются в настоящем длительном времени. Это:

1 Глаголы восприятия: see; hear; smell; taste; feel
   Eg. I see a picture.

2 Глаголы, передающие мыслительную деятельность: believe; think; assume; consider; understand; suppose; expect; agree; know; remember; forget.
   Eg. I believe she is a talented girl.
Глаголы, передающие чувства: like; love; detest; envy; hate; hope; prefer; wish; want; forgive.
Eg. I like to rest at the seaside.

4 Другие глаголы: appear (в значении «казаться»); be; belong; fit; have(в значении «иметь, обладать»); know; look (в значении «казаться»); need; require; want; weigh; wish.
Eg. He knows where Peter is.

Некоторые из этих глаголов все же могут употребляться в длительном времени, если они выражают не состояния, а деятельность. Значение глагола при этом немного изменяется.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I think she is very talented. (=I believe)</td>
<td>I’m thinking about my trip. (=I’m considering)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The soup tastes delicious. (=It has a good flavour)</td>
<td>Why are you tasting the soup? (=you are trying its flavour)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He has a car. (=he possesses)</td>
<td>He is having supper. (=he is eating)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I see you are in trouble. (=I understand)</td>
<td>I’m seeing my dentist tonight. (=I’m visiting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The rose smells nice. (=has the smell)</td>
<td>I’m smelling the rose. (=trying the smell)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The baby weighs 6 kilos. (=it is)</td>
<td>I’m weighing the baby. (=I’m finding out the weight)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You look great! (=you appear)</td>
<td>He is looking for his keys. (=He’s trying to find the keys)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann is very beautiful.</td>
<td>Ann is being very naughty these days. (=she’s behaving)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love summer. (in general)</td>
<td>I’m loving this party. (I’m enjoying, in specific)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 1. Choose the right form of the verb.

1. I am seeing / see my lawyer on Monday.
2. This cake is tasting / tastes delicious.
3. Mary is English. She is coming / comes from England.
4. I am not knowing / don’t know how to get to the station.
5. Why are you smelling / do you smell the soup.
6. I am weighing / weigh my dog.
7. Peter is listening / listens to his teacher.
8. Jane is / is being very clever.
9. Do you enjoy / Are you enjoying big parties?
10. This girl is weighing / weighs 50 kilos.
11. I don’t look / am not looking through this magazine.
12. They come / are coming from London tonight.
13. I see / am seeing you need my help.
15. Tom is / is being very rude and selfish these days.

Exercise 2. Put the right form of the verb.

Exercise 3. Complete the following pairs of sentences using the verb in *italics*.

1. **smell**
   Mmmm! Supper _____ good! What is it?
   Why _____ you _____ the milk? It is not sour!

2. **fit**
   This dress _____ me perfectly! I’m glad that I’ve bought it.
   We _____ a new carpet in the sitting-room.
3 think
I ______ of emigrating.
I ______ this problem is very serious.

4 not enjoy
We ______ this party. There are too many people.
I ______ small parties.

5 have
She is in the café with her friend. They ____ having lunch.
She _____ a nice dog.

6 listen
I never_____ to 9 o’clock news.
He _____ to a new song on the radio.

7 look
Your hair ____ great!
What ___ you _____ looking for?

8 be
She _____ very kind to me.
She _____ the best student in the group.

9 love
They _____ detective films.
They ______ this comedy.

10 feel
I _____ terrible now, as I am frightened.
I _____ that she is a nice boy.

Mixed Practice

Exercise 1. Read the dialogue.

- What do you do?
- I am a teacher.
  I teach pupils

- What are you doing now?
- I am preparing for the lesson.

Work in pairs. Make up similar dialogues with the professions given below.
- a mechanic
- an artist
- an architect
- a journalist
- a travel agent
- a farmer
- a chef
- an interpreter
**Exercise 2.** Open the brackets and put the verbs into the right tense form.

1 Every Monday Jane (to drive) her daughter to English classes.
2 Usually I (to spend) my summer holidays at home, but this summer I (to study) French at a language school in Paris. That’s why I am in Paris now.
3 Shhhhh! Be quiet! Jake (to sleep)
4 Don’t forget to put on your mac. It (to rain) heavily.
5 You (to want) to come over for dinner tonight?
6 I am sorry, I can’t hear what you (to say) because everybody (to talk).
7 The doctor (to say) that the country air would be good for my heart.
8 I (to hate) living in Seattle because it always (to rain).
9 At the moment Justin (to write) a book about his adventures in Italy.
10 This painting (to belong) to an unknown artist who lived many centuries ago.
11 You (to happen) to know where I can buy ham, sausages and such things?
12 The author (to describe) the crater as a dark, gloomy place.
13 The policeman (to show) them the way to the station, as they (not to know) how to get there.
14 The hotel (not to take) any responsibility for the loss of personal property.
15 She always (to gossip). I (to think) she is fond of it.
16 My watch (not to keep) good time. It needs to be repaired.
17 The teacher (to explain) a new rule to the pupils and (to dictate) some examples to illustrate it.
18 Don’t interrupt me. I (to hate) it.
19 We must complete the experiment. The Professor (to insist) on it.
20 The weather (to get) colder and colder.

**TEST**

**Task I.** Complete the letter, using the verbs in brackets in the correct tense form.

Dear John,

The address (to be) rather a surprise, isn’t it? Yes, I (to be) actually in America. I (to live) here now. Can you imagine? I (to be) very busy going about “seeing America” that I (to have) hardly any time for writing letters. All the same, I (not to be) lazy I (to keep) a journal. I (to know) you (to find) this hard to believe, so to prove what I (to say) I (to send) the journal to you now, under separate cover. I have seen an heard so many interesting things, that I (to want) to write them down while the impressions (to be) still fresh in my mind. I (to hope) it will interest you as well. I often (to think) about you and (to hope) we will meet soon.

Kind regards and best wishes to you,

Yours sincerely,

Mary.
**Task II.** Complete the dialogue.

Ann: - Hello, Mum!
Mum: - hello, Ann! Where you (to call) from?
Ann: - I (to call) from the office. I (to have) lunch now, so I can speak to you. How you (to get) on?
Mum: - Oh, quite fine, thank you darling. You (to come) on Saturday?
Ann: - Of course, I am. I (to look) forward to coming home. I (to want) to see you so much!
Mum: - So do we. When your train (to arrive) in Brest?
Ann: - It (to leave) Minsk at 2 o’clock in the afternoon and (to arrive) in Brest at 6 o’clock in the evening.
Mum: - That’s good.
Ann: - Oh, Mum. Is father at home? Can I speak to him?
Mum: - You (to see), he is busy now. He (to work) in the study. I (to suppose) he (to write) a report.
Ann: - Oh. That’s OK the. See you on Saturday
Mum: - Kiss you, bye.

**Task III.** Open the brackets, put the verbs into the correct tense form.

1. As a rule we (not to have) a break during our English classes.
2. She (to enjoy) reading American magazines and newspapers.
3. The clerks usually (to have) 45 minutes for lunch and then they (to go) back to work again.
4. Sometimes they (to work) together on Monday translating business letters from English into Russian.
5. Our German classes (to last) two hours.
6. They (to discuss) their plans for tomorrow.
7. I (not to interfere) people when they (to read).
8. The only thing I (to know) I am still here, I still (to work).
9. He (to make) more money than John because he (to work) harder than John.
10. Where the old woman (to live) now? She (to live) with her daughter. She usually (to live) with her for three months every year.
11. What your brother (to do) now? - He (to do) a crossword puzzle in the newspapers. He (to do) it every day.
12. He (to want) to buy a car but first he has to learn how to drive, so he (to take) driving lessons now.
13. He is a very hard worker. He often (to work) until midnight. It is midnight now and he still (to work).
14. Is Mary ready to come out? – No, she still (have) a shower.
15. He often (to read) historical novels, he (to read) a very good one now.
16. What they (to discuss)? – Music, I guess. They always (to discuss) music when they (to meet) each other.
17. Great Britain (to have) a generally mild and temperate climate.
18. The Urals (to form) the natural border between Europe and Asia.
19. Nick and Peter (to live) a long way from the office.
Unit 3. Present Perfect and Present Perfect Progressive

A. Present Perfect
B. Present Perfect Progressive

A. Present Perfect
Настоящее совершенное время

Study the following rules of the formation of the Present perfect tense. Ask questions, if any.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Утвердительная форма</th>
<th>Отрицательная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительно-отрицательная форма</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have walked</td>
<td>I have not walked</td>
<td>Have I walked?</td>
<td>Have I not walked?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He (she, it) has</td>
<td>He (she, it) has not</td>
<td>Has he (she, it)</td>
<td>Has he (she, it) not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walked</td>
<td>walked</td>
<td>walked?</td>
<td>walked?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We have walked</td>
<td>We have not walked</td>
<td>Have we walked?</td>
<td>Have we not walked?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have walked</td>
<td>You have not walked</td>
<td>Have you walked?</td>
<td>Have you not walked?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They have walked</td>
<td>They have not walked</td>
<td>Have they walked?</td>
<td>Have they not walked?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

В разговорной речи обычно употребляются следующие сокращения:

- а) в утвердительной форме изменяется написание и произн
сение вспомогательного глагола have / has: I’ve [aiv] = I have, he’s [hi:z] = he has, we’ve [wi:v] = we have;
- б) в отрицательной форме – два варианта сокращения:
  - отрицательная частица not остается без изменений, сокра
щению подвергается только вспомогательный глагол: I’ve not = I have not, he’s not = he has not, we’ve not = we have not;
  - отрицательная частица not теряет букву o и сливается со
вспомогательным глаголом: I haven’t [hævnt] = I have not, he hasn’t [hæznt] = he has not; такое же изменение происходит и в вопросительно-отрицательной форме: Haven’t you walked?, Hasn’t he walked?
Основные случаи употребления

1. Present Perfect употребляется для выражения действия, уже совершившегося к настоящему моменту, и имеющего непосредственную связь с настоящим моментом, которая проявляется как результат действия, имеющийся налицо в момент речи: E.g.

![Diagram](image.png)

Так как Present Perfect выражает результат действия, эта временная форма часто употребляется для того, чтобы начать беседу или ввести новую тему. Однако если речь в беседе идет об одном и том же предмете с указанием деталей, то вместо Present Perfect употребляют обычно Past Simple. В этом случае могут упоминаться конкретные обстоятельства действия (время, место, причина, цель, образ действия и т.д.). E.g.

“Pussy Cat, Pussy Cat, Where have you been?”
“I’ve been to London To look at the Queen.”

Present Perfect часто употребляется без указания времени совершения действия, поскольку внимание говорящего обращено не на время совершения действия, а на его результат в настоящем. e.g. I have broken my pen.

Present Perfect часто употребляется с наречиями just, ever, never, already, yet, before, recently, lately, e.g. She has just missed being run over. Have you heard of him lately?

Present Perfect может употребляться также с today, this week, this month, this year, this morning и т.д., если эти периоды времени еще не закончились. e.g. This year we have taken only one assistant. (This year is not over.) He has not received any letters from her this week. (This week is not over.)

Однако если период времени истек употребляется Past Simple: e.g. I met him this morning. (It is no longer morning.)

Необходимо отметить, что именно Past Simple употребляется в специальных вопросах, начинающихся с вопросительных слов when, how, where, когда речь идет о событиях в прошлом. e.g. When did you actually arrive? Where did I leave my pen? How did they get here?

2. Present Perfect также употребляется для выражения длительного действия, которое началось в прошлом и еще совершается в настоящее время. Это грамматическое значение в основном выражается с помощью Present Perfect Progressive. Однако Present Perfect Non-Progressive употребляется в следующих случаях:
а) с глаголами состояния, которые не употребляются во временах группы Continuous (to be, to have, ho know, to love и др.): e.g. I have loved her since she was a child. He has known her for two years.

б) Present Perfect употребляется вместо Present Perfect Progressive в отрицательных предложениях, когда полностью отрицается само действие: e.g. We have not sat here for ages. She has not written to me for a year.

В этом случае Present Perfect переводится на русский язык настоящим временем и употребляется с обозначениями времени, указывающими на период, в течение которого совершается действие (for an hour, for many years, for a long time) или на тот момент, с которого началось действие (since June, since 1917). В предложении с союзом since употребляется Past Simple, чтобы указать момент, с которого началось действие: e.g. He has lost over 10 kilos in weight since he started that diet.

3. Present Perfect употребляется для выражения совершенного будущего действия в придаточных предложениях времени и условия, которые вводятся союзами after, when, as soon as, until (till), before, if и т.д. Present Perfect показывает, что действия придаточного предложения будет выполнено прежде, чем произойдет действие главного предложения: e.g. After I have read the book, I shall give it to you. We shall start at five o’clock if it has stopped raining by that time.

4. Present Perfect также употребляется в некоторых устойчивых выражениях:
   а) They have made it! ( = They have succeeded)
   б) I have had enough. ( = I am fed up. I don’t want to do any more)
   в) Now you have done it! ( = You have done something seriously wrong)
   г) You have had it! ( = You are in trouble)

**Exercise 1.** Complete the dialogues using the present perfect form and one or more of the time expressions from the box. Do it according to the following scheme:

| ever, never, often, before, (three / several) times, this year, in the last few days, the first time |

**Student A:**

A: Do you often come to this disco?
B: No, this is …

2. A: How do you know you way around the town so well?
B: Oh, I …
3. A: Do you think it’s warm enough to swim in the sea yet?
B: Oh yes. I …
4. A: Does your brother drive carefully?
B: No, not at all! He …!
5. A: Does it normally rain here in summer?
B: Not usually, but …
6. A: You’re a very good darts player. Do you play a lot?
B: No, …! It’s just beginner’s luck, I suppose.
7. A: How many times … to a pop concert?
B: …! My parents won’t let me. But I … classical music concerts.

**Exercise 2.** Write sentences using the Present Perfect and a superlative degree of an adjective. The words in the box will help you.


Student A:

I really love this cake! It’s the nicest cake I’ve ever had!

1. His exam marks are terrible. They ….
2. This book is really boring. It’s …. 
3. That basketball player is enormous! He’s …. 
4. Of course I think you’re beautiful, my darling! You …. 
5. My new pullover only cost $5! It …. 
6. The children are really enjoying the holiday. It …. 
7. The temperature today is 38º. It …. 

**Exercise 3.** Use the notes below to write dialogues. Make up the last few dialogues yourself. Do it according to the following scheme:

Student A: (hold snake?)
Student B: (yes-two)
Student A: (where?)
Student B: (pet shop-garden)

Have you ever held a snake?

Yes, I have. I’ve held two.

Where did you hold them?

The first time was in a pet shop and the second was when I found one in my garden.
1. A: (helicopter?)  
B: (no)  
A: (aeroplane?)  
B: (yes)  
A: (where?)  
B: (Australia)  
A: (what do?)  
B: (uncle)  

2. A: (read ―Murder on the Orient Express‖?)  
B: (yes)  
A: (like?)  
B: (super)  
A: (see film?)  
B: (yes)  
A: (like?)  
B: (boring)

3. (find any money?)  
4. (pop concert?)  
5. (bitten by dog?)

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the statements below using the Present Perfect. The words in the box will help you:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Drink</th>
<th>Sell</th>
<th>Spell</th>
<th>Bite</th>
<th>Run away</th>
<th>Spend</th>
<th>Buy</th>
<th>Paint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Their house is now pink! They … .
2. They haven’t got a car any more. They … .
3. His dog is missing! It … .
4. They now own their own house. They … .
5. Your spelling of “accommodation” isn’t right. You … .
6. I have to go and have an injection. A dog … .
7. I haven’t any money left! I … .

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using the Present Perfect (affirmative, negative or interrogative). Use your imagination:

Student A:  
Student B:

1. A: Go and have a wash.  
   B: … !  
   A: Well, your face is still dirty.
2. A: What did your parents say about your exam results?  
   B: I … yet. I’m too frightened!
3. A: Can I copy your geography homework?  
   B: Wait a few minutes. I … .
4. A: … ?  
   B: No, the shops aren’t open yet. I’ll buy some later.
5. A: I’m sorry. I …!
   B: It doesn’t matter. I don’t like cake anyway.
6. A: …?
   B: Of course not! I never take your things without asking!
7. A: … bath?
   B: She couldn’t. There wasn’t any hot water.

**Exercise 6.** Expand the following notes into dialogues. Do it according to the following scheme:

Student A: (shopping?) Student B: (forget list)

1. A: (eat all sandwiches!)
   B: (sorry, hungry)
2. A: (why not buy present for Lucy?)
   B: (not enough money)
3. A: (paint bedroom black!)
   B: (sale in paint shop—paint very cheap)
4. A: (why no haircut?)
   B: (shop closed)
5. A: (not finish homework!)
   B: (boyfriend phone)
6. A: (someone take new cassette!)
   B: (not me!)
7. A: (why not go on holiday?)
   B: (dad lose plane tickets)
8. A: (find pen?)
   B: (yes, in pocket)

**Exercise 7.** Use a verb and a time expression from the box and add a second sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verbs</th>
<th>time expressions</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>since</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>ages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>a long time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be able to</td>
<td>a short time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>a few days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want</td>
<td>was a boy / baby</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been allowed to</td>
<td>was 2 / 12 / years old</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. He’s a good friend of my father’s. Dad ….
2. At last mum and dad are going to America. They ….
3. Sue hasn’t got used to the school yet. She (only) ….
4. She … . In fact, I think she could ski before she could walk!
5. Marjorie is 18 but she isn’t allowed to go to a disco! I …!
6. I don’t really know how the computer works. I (only) ….
7. My little sister has only just discovered that Santa Claus does not exist but my little brother ….

**Exercise 8.** Make up sentences using the Present Perfect:

Student A: mum not drive car – since have accident

1. Dad much healthier – since buy bicycle.
2. William not eat meat – since work on farm last summer.
3. Not go out with other girls – since know my girlfriend.
4. My brother much nicer to me – since become priest.
5. Since Derek buy computer – not go out with friends.
7. We very sad – since dog die.
8. My English teacher much better teacher – since go to America.

**Exercise 9.** Use the Present Perfect or the Past Simple:

1. I originally (to study) physics at University and I (to graduate) with a first-class degree.
2. I can’t believe that you (to eat) three pizzas already! I only (to bring) them in fifteen minutes ago!
3. I (not to apply) for a job with your company before.
4. I’m writing in connection with the advertisement which (to appear) on December 3.
5. The package (to arrive) safely yesterday?
6. We still hold meetings in the old house, which (to stand) on the same spot for over two hundred years.
**Exercise 10.** Use the Present Perfect or the Past Simple in questions in the following dialogue:

A: Are you a soldier by profession?
B: Yes.
A: How long you (to be) in the army?
B: Twenty-five years.
A: When you (to join) the army?
B: In 1932.
A: Where you (to serve) during the war?
B: First on the territory of the Ukraine, then in the Far East.
A: You (to see) much fighting in the Ukraine?
B: A good deal.
A: How long you (to remain) there?
B: For over a year.
A: Why you (to be) sent to the Far East?
B: I (to be) wounded.
A: What sort of wound it (to be)?
B: A bullet through the shoulder.
A: How many times you (to be) wounded during the war?
B: Three times.
A: They (to be) serious wounds?
B: Rather.
A: When you (to be) wounded last time?
B: In 1945.

**Exercise 11.** Translate the following sentences from Russian into English:

1. У меня закончился бензин. Давай заедем на заправочную станцию.
2. Роберт всегда был моим хорошим другом. Это самая легкая работа, которую я когда-либо выполнял.
3. Я не был в этом городе целую вечность. Как все изменилось!
4. Я уже напечатал вашу статью. Возьмите, пожалуйста.
5. Он два года служил в армии, затем переехал в Минск и поступил в университет.
6. Когда ты закончил университет? И чем ты занимался все это время?
9. Ты был когда-нибудь в Австрии? – Да, я был в Вене несколько раз.
**TASK I.** Use the Present Perfect or the Past Simple in the following sentences:

1) You ever (to be) to this picture gallery? – Yes, I (to visit) it once when a youth, and the pictures (to make) a great impression on me.

2) You already (to see) the new film? – Yes, I (to manage) to see it yesterday.

3) I (not to see) anything of Jane lately. When you (to see) her last? – I (to meet) her two days ago. I (to think) that she (to change) very much.

4) You (to have dinner) already? – No, not yet. The waitress (to take) my order 15 minutes ago and (not to bring) my anything yet.

5) You ever (to see) Ulanova dance? – Oh yes, I (not to miss) a single performance with her.

6) You (to bring) you bathing suit with you? – Yes, I am going to show how much I (to improve) since last summer. I (to take) some swimming lessons lately.

7) Where you (to get) this fine new bicycle from? – My parents (to give) it to me as a birthday present. – Let’s go cycling this afternoon. I (to find) some really nice places in the vicinity.

8) Mother, I just (to write) to him.

9) My hands are all wet with these roses. Aren’t they lovely? They (to come) up from John this morning.

10) I (to meet) Ann at her father’s house twenty years ago and (to know) her ever since.

**TASK II.** Translate the following sentences from Russian into English, paying special attention to the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Simple:

1) Ваш оркестр когда-нибудь был в Англии? – Да, конечно. В последний раз нас пригласили на международный фестиваль прошлым летом.

2) Где ты была? – В театре. – Тебе понравился спектакль?

3) Вы обычно плотно завтракаете? – Да, но сегодня я не позавтракал совсем и чувствую себя не очень хорошо.

4) Когда ты усовершенствовал свой компьютер? – К сожалению, я еще этого не сделал.

5) Разве ты не знаешь, что Анна поступила в университет? – Если не ошибаюсь, она стала студенткой юридического факультета два года назад.

6) Он ведь уже сдал все экзамены, не так ли? – Да, вчера он сдал последний экзамен, но я не знаю, какую оценку он получил.

7) Ты раньше встречала этого человека? – Мы вместе учились в школе.

8) Гарри никогда не лжет. По крайней мере, в детстве он всегда говорил правду.

9) Где ты купила эту прелестную блузку? – В магазине одежды недалеко от дома.

10) Когда ты в последний раз говорила с Брайаном? – Я только что ему звонила.
Present Perfect Progressive образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола to be в форме Present Perfect (have been, has been) и формы причастия настоящего времени (Present Participle) смыслового глагола: I have been walking, he has been walking, you have been walking.

### Основные случаи употребления

1. The Present Perfect Progressive Tense употребляется для выражения длительного действия, которое началось в прошлом и еще совершается в настоящее время. При употреблении The Present Perfect Progressive Tense в данном значении всегда указан период, в течение которого совершается действие. Для обозначения времени используются обстоятельства for (в течение) и since (с тех пор, как; с):

   E. g. I've been working for the same company for twelve years. - Я работаю в одной и той же компании 12 лет.

   How long have you been playing football? - Сколько времени ты играешь в футбол?

2. The Present Perfect Progressive Tense употребляется также для выражения действия, которое продолжалось в течение определенного периода времени, но закончилось непосредственно перед моментом речи и связано с настоящим временем своим результатом:

   E. g. She's been crying. (Her eyes are red). - Она (долго) плакала. (У нее красные глаза.)

   Look! It has been snowing. (The ground is all white). - Смотри! Снег идет (уже давно). (Вся земля - белая.) Сравните: Look! It's snowing. (Действие длится.)
3. The Present Perfect Progressive Tense может употребляться и без указания длительности действия, если из контекста ясно, что действие началось в прошлом и продолжается (или продолжается) до настоящего времени:
E. g. Please, excuse my dirty clothes. I've been tidying the room. - Пожалуйста, извините меня за грязную одежду. Я убираю комнату.
- Why are you so hot? - Почему ты такой разгоряченный?
- I've been playing football. - Я играл в футбол.

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences using the Present Perfect Progressive and a suitable time expression:

1. Where on earth have you been? I’ve been waiting for ages!
2. My brother isn’t very good at languages. He ........... and he can’t speak a word!
3. Children! Turn the television off! You ...........!
4. I wonder when the new house will be finished. They ...........!
5. I wonder why Susie doesn’t answer the phone. I ...........!
6. It’s our turn to use the tennis table now. You ...........!
7. The weather is really awful. It ...........!
8. Mum, tell Paul to give me back my walkman! He ...........!

Exercise 2. What do you think they have / it has been doing? Complete the dialogues:

Kate looks very bored! She’s been doing her homework.
1. A: Hey, look out of the window! It .......... ! B: Fantastic, we can go sledging!
3. A: Dad’s been very bad-tempered recently because he .......... hard. 
   B: Well, he should try to relax and spend more time with his family!
   B: You poor thing. You should make your husband help you!
5. A: I think I can smell smoke on Debbie’s clothes. 
   B: Perhaps .......... .
   B: Do you know what kind of drugs?
7. A: Your eyes look very red. 
   B: I .......... .

**Exercise 3.** There are eight children in the Murphy family. They are always arguing and blaming each other for things that are missing or broken. Use the notes below to write their dialogues. You must think of your own excuse or reason (line B)!

**Student A**

1. A: jeans; tear! B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .
2. A: Listen to my CDs; not put away! B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .
3. A: use computer; damage disk! B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .
4. A: feed goldfish; too much food! B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .
5. A: play with chess set; lose piece! B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .
6. A: dad’s whisky; whole bottle! B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .
7. A: do washing up; break four glasses. B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .
8. A: mow lawn; cut down flowers! B: It was me. Sorry, but .......... .

**Exercise 4.** Put each verb in brackets into either the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Progressive.

1. Someone (eat) .......... has eaten all the cakes. I’ll have to buy some more.
2. What (you buy) .......... your sister for her birthday?
3. My throat is really sore. I (sing) .......... all evening.
4. Brenda (learn) .......... Belarussian, but she finds it difficult.
5. How many people (you invite) .......... to your party?
6. Those two cats (sit) .......... on that branch for the last hour.
7. It (rain) .......... all day! Why can’t it stop!
8. Diana (wear) .......... twelve different dresses in the past week!
9. I (do) .......... everything you asked. What should I do now?
10. Graham and Pauline (try) .......... to find a house for ages, but they can’t find one they can afford.
**Exercise 5.** Fill in the gaps. Complete the dialogues using either the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Progressive.

1. A: How long .......... your boyfriend?  
   B: About three months.
2. A: How long .......... in York?  
   B: About three months.
3. A: There you are! I’ve been looking everywhere for you!  
   B: I .......... my homework.
4. A: There you are! I’ve been looking everywhere for you!  
   B: I .......... in the garden.
5. A: How have you spent the afternoon?  
   B: I .......... some magazines.
6. A: Do you like reading?  
   B: Yes, I .......... three books this week!
7. A: Where has dad been this morning?  
   B: He .......... the shopping.

**Exercise 6.** Put each verb in brackets into the Past Simple, the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Progressive.

It was announced in London this morning that the British Oil Corporation (1) .......... (discover) oil under the sea near the Welsh coast. The company, which (2) .......... (drill) for oil in the area since 1990, (3) .......... (find) small amount of oil in Swansea last month, and since then (4) .......... (discover) larger amounts under the seabed nearby. Last year the government (5) .......... (lend) over £ 50,000,000 to BOC, and (6) .......... (give) permission for the company to build an oil refinery and other facilities in South Wales.

The reaction of local people to today’s news (7) .......... (be) mixed so far. Local MPs (8) .......... (already welcome) the news, pointing out that the oil industry will bring badly needed jobs to the area. But local residents are worried about the danger of pollution. “Nobody (9) .......... (ask) us yet what we want,” said Ann Griffiths, leader of the Keep Out The Oil Campaign. “Look what (10) .......... (happen) when they (11) .......... (find) oil in Scotland in the 1960s. The oil companies (12) .......... (get) rich, not the local people. BOC (13) .......... (not tell) us the truth about what this is going to mean for our people.” A BOC spokesman later (14) .......... (refuse) to comment. Meanwhile local campaigners (15) .......... (ask) the government to hold an inquiry.
**Exercise 7.** Choose the most suitable tense.

1. Did you see / Have you seen my bag anywhere? I can’t find it.
2. Larry is writing / has been writing / has written his novel for the last two years without getting further than Chapter One.
3. From the minute he got up this morning Gary asked / has asked / has been asking silly questions.
4. Have you given / Did you give Helen my message when you have seen / saw her.
5. Sorry, could you say that again? I didn’t listen / haven’t listened / haven’t been listening to you.
6. The police think that they found / have found your missing wallet, so call this number.
7. I don’t think we’ll go swimming after all because the weather changed / has changed / has been changing.
8. How was your holiday in Italy? Did you visit / Have you visited lots of interesting places?
9. Did you two meet / Have you two met before? Eric, this is Amanda.
10. Did you meet / Have you met anyone interesting at the reception?

**Exercise 8.** Put each verb in brackets into a suitable tense.

1. I’m sorry about not coming last week. I (have) ...had... a cold and so I (stay) .......... at home.
2. Wait a minute. I (have) ........ an idea. Let’s go and see Roger. We last (see) ........ him a long time ago.
3. It’s nice to be back here in Minsk. This is the second time I (come) .......... here.
4. I’m phoning about your advertisement for a bicycle for sale, which I (see) .......... in the local paper. (you sell) ........ it? Or is it still available?
5. This place is in a terrible mess! What on earth (you do) .......... ?
6. And now for an item of local news. Hampshire police (find) ........ the dangerous snake which (go) .......... missing earlier in the week.
7. This tooth (kill) ........ me lately! So I (make) .......... an appointment with a dentist for Tuesday.
8. I can’t give you the report I (promise) ........ for today because I (not finish)...........
9. Harry (not look) ........ well since he (go) ........ on a diet.
10. It says in the paper that they (discover) ........ oil in Wales. They (look for) .......... it for ages.
**Exercise 9.** Answer the following questions.

1. What are you reading now? How long have you been reading it?
2. Is your daughter learning to play the piano? How long has she been learning?
3. When did you buy your suit? How long have you been wearing it?
4. Is Natalie a friend of yours? How long have you known her?
5. When did your brother graduate from his University? Where has he been working since then?
6. How long had the Smiths been living together before Nick decided to leave his wife?
7. How long have you been learning English?
8. Can you skate? How long have you been skating?
9. Is Tim away on business now? How long has he been away?

**Exercise 11.** “What have you been zooing?” Complete the dialogues using the prompts.

*Last week I took my group to the zoo, but I’ll never do it again!*

*Hey, Pete! Your clothes are all green! What have you been doing?*

*I’ve been feeding the zebras. They eat grass.*

*A: Hey, Nick ....... ?
B: I’ve been feeding the seals. They eat.... .*

*A: Hey, Martha ....... ?
B: I’ve been feeding the piranha fish. They eat... .*

*A: Hey, Charlie ....... ?
B: I’ve been feeding the ... . They eat cabbage.*

*A: Hey, Mary ....... ?
B: I’ve been feeding .... . ..... .*
**TEST**

**TASK I.** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct voice and tense-forms.
1. “I (not see) Ann lately. What she (do)?” “She just (take) her finals and (prepare) to go away for a holiday.”
2. It’s no use calling for the documents now. They (prepare) when I (leave) the office, but I don’t think they (be) ready yet.
3. Don’t let the boy stay out so long. He (run about) for three hours, and may catch cold.
4. It is unfair of you to be cross with the man. He (be) away for two weeks and you can’t blame him for the few mistakes that (make) during his absence.
5. That young singer has had a very good training. He (sing) for half an hour and never (stop) for a moment’s rest.
6. Our reply (send) to you as soon as all the dates (fix) finally. Some of them (consider) yet.
7. “Why you (wear) that strange-looking suit? You (look) quite a sight in it!” “Why, I (wear) it for a month and nobody (say) a word all this time.”
8. Jesse (be unemployed) for five months when he (manage) to get hired as a driver at a small factory.

**TASK II.** Translate into English.
1. Интересно, чем занимается Анна? Она просматривает утреннюю почту.
   – Как давно она это делает? – Мне кажется, она работает с 9 часов. Она уже прочитала все телеграммы и теперь просматривает письма.
3. Я уже почти два часа искала учебник, когда ты позвонил и сказал, что нашел его в своем рюкзаке.
4. Когда Вы впервые подняли тот вопрос? Как долго Вы его рассматриваете?
5. Я давно хочу поговорить с твоим братом, а у него все нет времени выслушать меня.
6. Андрей выглядит очень усталым. И то неудивительно, ведь в последнее время он много работал, чтобы хорошо подготовить проект.
8. Сколько времени Вы работаете в этой школе? – Я начала работать здесь как только закончила университет. С тех пор я здесь и работаю.
9. Я звоню ей с трех часов, но ее нет дома.
10. Я печатаю документы уже 2 часа. Но еще не закончила печатать их.
11. Ольги сегодня нет в университете. Она уже две недели болеет.
13. Где Вы купили эту чудесную вазу? – Она у меня с тех пор как я переехала в эту квартиру. Мне ее подарила подруга.
15. Ты уже уложила вещи? – Мы выезжаем через час.
Unit 4. Past Simple and Past Progressive

A. Past Simple

B. Past Progressive

A. Past Simple
Прошедшее простое время

Study the following rules of the formation of the Past Simple Tense. Ask questions, if any.

Past Indefinite правильных глаголов образуется путем прибавления во всех лицах окончания -ed к форме инфинитива: to expect – I expected, to play – she played.

1. Большая часть глаголов образует прошедшее время путем прибавления во всех лицах окончания -ed к форме инфинитива (без частицы to).

   - to start – started
   - to pass – passed
   - to look – looked

2. Глаголы, оканчивающиеся в инфинитиве на -e, теряют эту гласную при прибавлении окончания -ed.

   - to close – closed
   - phone – phoned

3. Глаголы, оканчивающиеся в инфинитиве на -y с предшествующей согласной, меняют у на i.

   - to try – tried
   - to apply – applied

4. В односложных глаголах согласная, стоящая после гласной, удваивается.

   - to stop – stopped
   - to plan – planned

5. Двусложные и многосложные глаголы, оканчивающиеся на одну согласную, перед которой стоит одна гласная, удваивают конечную согласную только в том случае, если ударение падает на последний слог.

   - to refer – referred
   - BUT:
   - to happen – happened
   - to listen – listened
   - to open – opened

Таблица неправильных глаголов

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Indefinite</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Verb</td>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>Past Tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to eat</td>
<td>eaten</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to fall</td>
<td>fallen</td>
<td>fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to fly</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>flew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to freeze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
<td>froze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to give</td>
<td>given</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to go</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to grow</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td>grew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hang</td>
<td>hung, hanged</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to learn</td>
<td>learnt, learned</td>
<td>learnt, learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to ride</td>
<td>ridden</td>
<td>rode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to ring</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rise</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to run</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to set</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to shake</td>
<td>shaken</td>
<td>shook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to show</td>
<td>shown, showed</td>
<td>showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sing</td>
<td>sung</td>
<td>sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sink</td>
<td>sunk</td>
<td>sank, sunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Основные случаи употребления

1. Для выражения прошедшего действия с такими обозначениями времени, как yesterday вчера, last week на прошлой неделе, an hour ago час тому назад, the other day на днях, on Monday в понедельник, in 1917 в 1917 году, during the war во время войны и т.п.

Время совершения действия может быть выражено также придаточным предложением.

Время совершения действия может и не быть указано.

Last night my neighbours celebrated their wedding anniversary.
There wasn’t any snow last December.
They went to the seaside last summer.

He called me when I was at the university.
I recognized him with difficulty.

2. Для выражения последовательности действий в прошлом.

The dog picked up the bone and carried it away.

3. Для выражения обычного, повторяющегося прошедшего действия.

Last year I often went to the theatre.

Exercise 1. Give the Past Indefinite form of the following verbs:

See, sleep, give, bring, say, speak, tell, go, come, meet, send, spend, built, catch, begin, know, teach, make, understand, sit, stand, sing, do, buy, sell, lose, find, hurt, put, cost, leave, keep, fall, be, have, set, rise, swim, write.
**Exercise 2.** Translate into Russian and comment on the use of the Past Simple Tense.

Student A:          Student B:

1. Last winter he often worked in the library.  
   Вчера я ездил в Лондон на- 
   вестить друга (прошедшее 
   действие с обозначением 
   времени yesterday).
2. The manager entered the office, sat down at his desk and began to look through the morning mail.
3. When I arrived at the station, I went to the booking-office and bought a ticket.
4. He came to my place when I was not at home.
5. Yesterday it was very cold, but today it is much warmer.
6. When did he come here first?
7. Brian came home, switched on the lights and sank into an armchair.
8. “Did you see Betty yesterday?” – “Oh yes, but she refused to talk.”

**Exercise 3.** Fill in the adverbs.

1. she/go shopping/in the afternoon. (often)  
2. in summer/we/go/to school/at 8 o’clock. (sometimes)
3. you/write/him/a letter. (never)
4. it/snow/a lot/in December. (usually)
5. John/drive/to work. (rarely)
6. Ann/wash/her hair/on Tuesdays. (always)
7. I/watch television/in the evenings. (usually)
8. they/eat/in the restaurant. (often)
9. we/drink/tea/in the morning. (never)
10. Tom and Brian/swim/in the river. (sometimes)

**Exercise 4.** Supply the Past Indefinite forms of the verbs in the box.

1. We needed some money, so we … our car.
2. They … last Saturday as usual.
3. I … a pet-dog when I was a boy.
4. Who closed the window last night?
5. Mary fell down the stairs this morning and hurt her leg.
6. She bought a dress which cost a lot of money.
7. I left this box on the bench yesterday.
8. My brother gave me this beautiful bag.
9. I saw him on the way to the University.
10. A. Christie wrote many novels and stories.
11. Mother taught me to read and write.
12. I put all your books on the shelf over there.

**Exercise 5.** Answer the following questions in the negative and explain why you didn’t do that.

1. Did you watch TV yesterday? 
   - No, I didn’t. I was very busy.
2. Did you travel much last summer?
3. Did your parents go to the country on Sunday?
4. Did you go to the swimming-pool on Wednesday?
5. Did you do the shopping at the weekend?
6. Did your friend work during his holidays?
7. Did you keep any pets in childhood?
8. Did you often get bad marks at school?
9. Did you often quarrel with your friends when you were a kid?
10. Did you like to play tennis last year?

**Exercise 6.** Imagine that your friend has just come back from holiday. Make up questions, using the words given below. Answer the questions.

1. How long did you stay there?
2. How did you go there?
3. Stay in a hotel/rent a room?
4. Hotel/restaurant good?
5. Go alone/with friends?
6. Food/good?
7. The weather/be fine?
8. What/activities in the evenings?
9. Meet/any interesting people?
10. What/activities in bad weather?
11. What places of interest/visited?
**Exercise 7.** Make up questions and give answers.

Student A: I enjoyed the performance. (Where? Why?)

Student B: When did you take it?

1. I enjoyed the performance. (Where? Why?)
2. He played the piano last night. (Where? How?)
3. They heard some interesting songs last week. (What songs? Where?)
4. This director made some good movies about children. (About whom?)
5. This artist painted many posters. (How many posters? What posters?)
6. She sang many songs at the concert. (At what concert? How many songs?)
7. He played in that orchestra. (What instruments? When?)
8. She took music lessons from this teacher. (When? Why?)
9. My father worked at a factory some years ago. (At what factory?)

**Exercise 8.** Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Student A: Who made the movie “Idiot”? (Pyriev)

Student B: Kozintsev did.

1. Who made the movie “Idiot”? (Pyriev)
2. Who painted the picture “Children”? (Serov)
3. Who wrote the music to the movies “Hamlet” and “King Lear”? (Shostakovich)
4. Who directed the play “Three Sisters” at the theatre? (Stanislavsky)
5. Who played the part in the English movie “King Lear”? (Paul Scofield)
6. Who founded the Puppet Theatre in Moscow? (Sergei Obraztsov)
7. What actors played in the movie “Waterloo”? (Russian, American and Italian actors)
8. Who wrote music to the movie “The Beginning”? (Shostakovich)

**Exercise 9.** Ask questions to the underlined parts of the sentences.

Student A: He wanted to learn the whole story.

Student B: What did he want to learn?

1. Last year he didn’t go to the South because of the exams.
2. They came to visit their friend yesterday.
3. He went to the concert two days ago.
4. He had breakfast at 8:30.
5. These students were usually late for their lectures last year because they had transport problems.
6. She didn’t tell him the truth.
8. Robert took his driving test last week.
9. No one wanted to learn the truth: everyone was afraid.
10. Jane asked her mother to buy her a pullover.

**Exercise 10.** Ask different types of questions to the following sentences.

1. You didn’t take your umbrella this morning.
2. They moved to New York last summer.
3. He didn’t give her a present.
4. Sometimes he found his work difficult.
5. You often mentioned her in your letters.
6. Things came to crisis in July.
7. I saw the announcement in the paper this morning.
8. She spoke with deep emotion.
9. The negotiations ended last week.
10. She thought her coffee tasted horrible.

**Exercise 11.** Complete the dialogue.

A: What (do) you over the weekend?
B: On Friday night I (go) to a concert.
A: You (enjoy) it?
B: Yes, I …. What you (do)?
A: I (watch) television. What you (do) on Saturday?
B: In the morning I (go) shopping.
A: Oh, I (go) shopping too. You (buy) anything?
B: No, I …. I (want) to buy a new coat. But I (not/have) enough money.
A: Neither … I. I (spend) too much last week.
B: Where you (go) in the afternoon?
A: I (go) to the new swimming pool.
B: So … I. I (not/see) you there. What time you (get) there?
A: At three o’clock. I (see) Tom. You (not/see) him, … you?
B: No, I …. 
A: What you (do) yesterday?
B: I (watch) football on television.
A: So … I. I (think) it (be) a great match. … you?
B: No, It (be) terrible. My team (lose).
Exercise 12. Ask an appropriate question for each answer. Put the verbs in brackets in the right form.

A. …
B. I (go) to the Black sea coast in summer.
A. …
B. I (spend) there a fortnight.
A. …
B. I (get) up early, (go) to the sea, (bath) and (lie) in the sun.
A. …
B. The weather (be) sunny and hot.
A. …
B. My friend and I (rent) a nice room in a private house.
A. …
B. No, it (be) not far from the sea.
A. …
B. We (cook) our meals at home.
A. …
B. Vegetables and fruits (be) not very expensive.
A. …
B. I greatly (enjoy) my holiday.

Exercise 13. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Когда они уехали? – Я не знаю. Меня не было дома.
2. Почему ты не подходила вчера к телефону, когда я звонил тебе? Тебя не было дома? – Я была дома. Видимо, что-то было не в порядке с телефоном.
3. Когда Дэнни уехал в Лондон? – Позавчера. Я проводил его. Он не хотел уезжать и выглядел очень расстроенным.
4. Как ты провел вчерашний вечер? – Как обычно.
5. Почему Вы вчера так с ним разговаривали? – Простите, я плохо себя чувствовал. Я не помню, что говорил.
6. Это был незабываемый вечер.
7. Письмо пришло вчера, верно? Кто принес его? Почему Вы не отдали мне его сразу?
8. Вчера я пошел в библиотеку. Я хотел взять словарь, но библиотека была, к сожалению, закрыта. Я пришел поздно.
11. Почему ты не позвонила мне? – Я вернулась домой слишком поздно.
12. Какие журналы он хотел показать мне. – Я не знаю.
14. Сколько писем Вы напечатали вчера. – Двадцать.
15. Кто навестил Вас вчера? – Друзья нашего сына.
Exercise 14. Use used to in the following sentences.
1. A: Did you … go there?
   B: Yes, I … go there but I don’t now.
2. A: Did he … live in London?
   B: No, he … … live in London. He … live in New York.
3. A: … you … walk to school?
   B: Yes, I … walk to school but now I cycle.
4. A: … she … work in a factory?
   B: Yes, but now she works in a shop.
5. A: … he … smoke?
   B: Yes, he did but he doesn’t now.

B. Past Progressive
Прошедшее длительное время

Study the following rules of the formation of the Past Simple Tense. Ask questions, if any.

Вспомогательный глагол to be в прошедшем времени + смысловой глагол с суффиксом -ing (причастие настоящего времени (Participle I))

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>reading</th>
<th>an English book</th>
<th>at 5.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>Was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>an English book</td>
<td>at 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who</td>
<td>was (not)</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>an English book</td>
<td>at 5?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>(not)</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>an English book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>at 5?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>an English book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>an English book?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What book</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Основные случаи употребления
Past Progressive употребляется:
1. для выражения незаконченного, длительного действия, происходившего в какой-то момент или период в прошлом (обозначения времени at six o’clock, at noon, at midnight, at that moment, during, from 5 till 7 o’clock yesterday, the whole day, all day long, all the time, still).
   At 10.00 I was having a bath.
2. для выражения двух длительных действий, которые происходили одновременно в течение одинакового промежутка времени.
   While he was speaking to the teacher I was waiting for him.
   Длительное действие в определенный момент может быть прервано одиночным действием в прошлом, выраженным Past Simple
   John arrived when I was cooking supper.
3. Past Progressive от глагола to go (I was going) в сочетании с инфинитивом употребляется для выражения имевшего в прошлом намерения совершить действие. В этом случае имеет значение собирался, намеревался.
   I was going to tell him about it, but he interrupted me.

Exercise 1. Say what you or other people were doing some time ago.
  e.g. - The whole day yesterday I was busy. (write an article)

  1. On Sunday I was in the library. (prepare for one’s exam)
  2. At 11 a.m. on Saturday I was at the University. (write a test)
  3. We were in the country on the weekend. (fish)
  4. All day long yesterday I was out. (work in the garden)
  5. At 7 o’clock yesterday evening we were still at the office. (have a meeting)
  6. From 10 till 12 on Sunday Victor was busy. (repair the TV set)
  7. At 10 a.m. yesterday I was at home. (clean the flat)
  8. Yesterday afternoon we were at the stadium. (play football)
  9. On Friday morning I was at work. (make an experiment)

Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets into Past Progressive. Make them negative.

  She was crying when I saw her.
  She was not crying, she was smiling when I saw her.

  1. She (cry) when I saw her.
  2. At 8 o’clock on Tuesday evening the students of our group (have) a meet-
3. They (go) to the recreation room to dance.  
4. They (revise) for their preliminary in English.  
5. We (have) a test at 2 p.m. yesterday.  
6. He (cook) breakfast when I saw him.  
7. At 7 sharp on Monday Kate (leave) the Institute.  
8. At that moment Tom (hurry) to the theatre.  
9. She (drill) a new grammar pattern during her lesson.  
10. The pupils (work) in the language laboratory at that time yesterday.  
11. Mary (read) when her friend came to see her.  
12. When I went out into the garden the sun (shine) brightly.

**Exercise 3. Make the sentences with the suitable adverbs.**

- during, at that moment, at that time, at... o'clock, the whole day, all day long, all night long, all the time, still

1. ... the day we were speaking about this problem many times.  
2. ... the children were writing, and translating examples.  
3. ... I was buying a present for my friend at the shopping center.  
4. ... they were singing songs in the garden.  
5. ... my brother was watching TV and listening to the music.  
6. ... the child was crying.  
7. ... my sister was speaking to her boy-friend on the phone.  
8. ... these people were smoking at the office.  
9. ... our teacher was ... correcting our mistakes.  
10. ... I was going to write an application.

**Exercise 4. Make up complex sentences.**

*e.g. play/talk to smb*

1. have a bath/wash the dishes;  
2. make tea/clean the car;  
3. listen to the news/read the papers;  
4. have a holiday/work hard;  
5. write an article/do one's homework;  
6. repair the tape-recorder/do the housework;  
7. look through business papers/type;  
8. have dinner/sweep the floor;  
9. do shopping/sleep;  
10. play the piano/have a rest;  

While the children were playing, Mrs. Smith was talking to her neighbour.
11. revise a new material/write a report;
12. rain/sit in the living-room.

**Exercise 5.** Ask your partner what he/she was doing at this period of time.

What were you doing at 7.15?

- 7.00-7.30 – did morning exercises;
- 8.00-8.30 – had breakfast;
- 8.30-9.30 – had a shower;
- 9.30-10.00 – watched TV;
- 11.00-12.00 – read magazines;
- 12.30-13.00 – cleaned his/her room;
- 13.30-14.00 – had dinner;
- 14.00-15.20 – slept;
- 16.00-18.00 – did shopping;
- 19.00-20.00 – went for a walk;
- 20.15-20.45 – talked on the phone.

**Exercise 6.** Ask and answer questions.

1. Betty/dance with;
2. Jack/wait for;
3. They/listen to;
4. Mary/look for;
5. They/talk about;
6. The boss/speak to;
7. Kate/laugh at;
8. The girl/explain;
9. Daniel/play with;
10. The woman/pay attention to.

**Exercise 7.** Use Past Progressive instead of the infinitives in brackets.

What you (to do) yesterday at 3.00 p.m.?

I (to play) tennis and my brothers (to listen to) the music.
1. It (to rain) when we went out.
2. From the noise we heard it was clear that our neighbours' boy (to practice) the piano.
3. While he (to learn) to drive he had many accidents.
4. When we first met you (to study) English.
5. “Who you (to talk to) as I came in?” – “I (to talk) to my new secretary.”
6. My wife and I (to discuss) this problem when you came.
7. “Whose book you (to read)?”- “My sister's. I just (to begin) when you entered the room.”
8. While we were (to walk) someone came into the house and left this note.
9. Where he (to live) when you saw him last?
10. Why you (to fool around) with the computer?
11. He had a lot of doubts while he (to plan) his crime.
12. While George (to think) of the career that lay before him Annie also (to plan) some improvements in the house and (to guess) what else this new change might bring.
13. Tom felt he (to become) too emotional and the inspector (to get) suspicious about it.
14. “Brian (to plan) some tidying, he (not)? So perhaps he (to look for) something in the loft when you came and frightened, him.” – “And I (to look for) him.”

Exercise 8. Complete each sentences with a suitable form of the verbs using the Past Simple or the Past Progressive.

1. Where you (to be) yesterday? — I (to be) at home the whole day. Oh, I (to be) in the garden. I (to read) your book and (not to hear) the telephone.
2. What you (to do) at five o'clock yesterday? — I (to work) in the library. — I (to be) there, too, but I (not to see) you.
3. Nina (to celebrate) her birthday yesterday. Her room looked beautiful, there (to be) many flowers in it.
4. When I (to come) in, somebody (to play) the piano, two or three pairs (to dance).
5. What you (to do) at seven o'clock yesterday? — I (to have) supper.
6. When I (to come) home yesterday, I (to see) that all my family (to sit) round the table. Father (to read) a letter from my uncle.
7. We (to have) a postcard from them two days ago.
8. Yesterday I (to work) at my English from five till seven.
9. It (to rain) the whole day yesterday.
10. Where your sister (to be) now? — She (to be) in her room. She (to do) her homework.
11. Last night we (to go) to a cafe to meet our friends.
12. When she (to open) the door yesterday, a man (to stand) on the doorstep.

**Exercise 9.** Translate into English using the Past Progressive.

1. Вчера с двенадцати до двух часов дня наши коллеги играли в теннис.
2. Тем временем, когда Катины родители смотрели телевизор, она готовила ужин.
3. В это время вчера наш начальник все еще рассказывал нам о своей собаке.
4. В то время, когда мы пили кофе и разговаривали, наши дети играли в соседней комнате.
5. Вчера в офисе мы все время получали факсы из разных городов.
6. Наш доктор вчера всю ночь работал. Он принимал людей в больнице.
7. В то время, когда мы обедали у наших друзей, их большая собака все время сидела под столом.
8. В половине восьмого вечера мы обедали. Во время обеда мы разговаривали о цветах в нашем саду.
9. Когда вчера утром я разговаривала с подругой по телефону, мои родители сидели на кухне.
10. Целый день мы покупали подарок маме на день рождения. Мы все время просили продавцов показать нам разные вещи.
11. Моя сестра весь вечер вчера учил английский.
12. Мы работали в саду, а мой брат слушал музыку все это время.
13. Когда я переводила статью, моя мама убирала квартиру.
14. Вчера Ирина играла на пианино весь вечер.
15. Мы были уверены, что в прошлое воскресенье с 5 до 7 он смотрел спортивную программу по телевидению.

**Exercise 10.** Put the verbs in brackets into a suitable form using the Past Progressive.

1. While I (answer) my teacher’s questions, my classmates (not to write) the right variants.
2. When my father came home, I (translate), my sister (play), my brother (watch) TV and my mother (cook).
3. They (pay), when you met your friends at a shopping center?
4. When our chief came to the office, our secretary (send) a letter, our programmers (look) through the files.
5. My cousin (not to speak) on the mobile phone, when I saw her in the street.
6. She (not to wash) the floor at four o’clock yesterday.
7. In summer this old man still (stay) at home all the time.
8. Ann (take) a train to Brest at 11 o’clock yesterday?
9. When your colleagues (look) at my new secretary all the time?
10. My aunt (not to read) this book all night long.
11. John (go) to the railway station, when Dick met him?
12. Mother (not to drink) tea but coffee at eleven o’clock yesterday.
13. They (play) in the yard in the evening or in the morning?
14. When the teacher opened the door of the classroom, the pupils (not to sit) at their desks.

**Exercise 11.** Read the dialogues, translate and act them out.

1. 
   - What were you doing at 7.30?
   - The alarm clock was still ringing and I was just getting out of the bed.
   - And at 7.35?
   - Why, I was dressing.
   - Where were you at 7.50?
   - At breakfast. I was having my breakfast.
   - At 8?
   - Why, I was going to school.
   - Were you? Why are you late, then?
   - Am I?

2. 
   - What was Tom reading, Becky?
   - I don’t know.
   - Don’t you know? But he was reading aloud, so you must know.
   - Well, while he was reading aloud I was writing a letter to my friend.

3. 
   - Do you remember what you were doing at 8 o’clock last Monday evening?
   - Why? I was talking about music with my friends.
   - Were you? Weren’t you playing chess?
   - Oh, possibly. I don’t remember exactly.

4. 
   - Hi! How are you doing?
   - Fine, thank you. And you?
   - Great. Listen. When I came into the hall last night, I saw a lot of students there.
   - No wonder, they were having a discussion.
   - Was the monitor partaking in?
   - No, she wasn’t. She was speaking on the life-story of the main character of the novel.
What were the rest of the students doing?
They were listening to her very attentively.

5.
I’m sorry you didn’t come yesterday, Kate. I was waiting for you in the cafe.
I’m awfully sorry, Bill, but I didn’t feel very well.
I see. And while I was sitting at a table and waiting for you, Jill came in.
You were flirting, smiling at each other, drinking coffee and eating cakes while I was lying in bed ill.
You weren’t ill. When we were leaving the cafe, we saw you and Stephanie. You were laughing together and walking arm in arm.
Oh, I can easily explain that. We were only... I was only going to the chemist’s...

TEST

TASK I. Choose the correct form.
1. I … a light in your window as I … by.
a) saw … passed;  
b) was seeing … was passing;  
c) saw … was passing
2. Yesterday as I … down Cherry Lane, I … Thomas, an old friend of mine.
a) was walking … met;  
b) walked … met;  
c) was walking … was meeting
3. Liz’s elder brother said that he … to enter Leeds University.
a) went;  
b) were going;  
c) was going
4. While my son … for my call, somebody … at the door.
a) waited … knocked;  
b) was waiting … knocked;  
c) was waiting … was knocking
5. We … about him when he suddenly ….
a) just talked … came in;  
b) were just talking … came in;  
c) were just talking … were coming in
6. Yesterday while Dad … he … himself slightly.
a) shaved … cut;  
b) was shaving … was cutting;  
c) was shaving … cut
7. They … while they … their car.
a) quarreled … were washing;  
b) were quarreling … washed;  
c) were quarreling … were washing
8. Simon … a new car last month.
a) was buying;
b) buy;
c) bought
9. Neil … the door and … the room.
a) was opening … entered;
b) opened … entered;
c) opened … was entering
10. Sarah … supper while Dan … the TV.
a) was cooking … was repairing;
b) cooked … was repairing;
c) was cooking … repaired

**TASK II.** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense: the Past Simple or the Past Progressive.
1. I (get) a package in the mail. When I (open) it, I (find) a surprise.
2. He suddenly (realize) that he (travel) in the wrong direction.
3. I (not/hear) the thunder during the storm last night because I (sleep).
4. He (give) up his job as a journalist and (become) a teacher.
5. John’s children (use) to be well-behaved but now they are quite naughty.
6. When my car (break) down I (phone) a garage.
7. I (try) to explain the situation to my parents, but they just (not/understand) what I (talk) about.
8. When the guests (arrive) Mrs. Black still (cook) dinner.
9. I (take) my umbrella because it (rain).
10. My brother and sister (argue) about something when I (walk) into the room.
11. She (stand) at the bus-stop. I (ask) what bus she (wait) for.
12. As the goalkeeper (run) forward to seize the ball a bottle (strike) him on the shoulder.
13. The dentist’s waiting room was full of people. Some (read) magazines, others just (turn) over the pages. A woman (knit); a child (play) with a toy car. Suddenly the door (open) the nurse (say), ‘Next, please.’
14. Just as I (get) to an interesting part of the story, the doorbell (ring).
15. While I (wonder) whether to buy the dress or not, someone else (come) and (buy) it.

**TASK III.** Translate the following sentences into English using the Simple Past or the Past Progressive Tense.
1. Мы не поняли друг друга. Я ждал его в здании университета, а он в это время ждал меня на улице.
2. Ты была вчера дома в 5 часов? – Нет, я была в университете. Я сдавала экзамен по грамматике.
3. Шел ли дождь, когда ты вышел из дома?
4. Вчера весь вечер они обсуждали планы на летний отпуск.
5. Пять лет назад я имел обыкновение рано вставать.
6. Когда ты позвонил вчера, я был занят. Я переводил наш новый контракт.
7. Она сломала ключ, когда пыталась открыть дверь.
8. В прошлую пятницу я весь день работал над докладом.
10. Джейн познакомилась со своим будущим мужем, когда путешествовала по Индии.
11. Когда я выглянула в окно, то увидела, что мы летим над горами.
12. Мы, бывало, уезжали за город на выходные.
13. Когда ты был в Англии? Сколько времени ты там пробыл?
14. Было уже поздно, когда мы возвращались домой.
15. Мы переехали в эту квартиру 5 лет назад.
16. Вчера в это время я загорала на пляже.
17. Я вошла в комнату и увидела, что она плачет.
18. Мы целый день работали в саду.
19. Она обычно проводила каникулы в деревне у бабушки.
20. Я порезала палец, когда чистила картошку.
Unit 5. Past Perfect and Past Perfect Progressive

A. Past Perfect
B. Past Perfect Progressive

Study the following rules of the formation of Past Perfect in the English language. Ask questions, if any.

A. Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Утвердительная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительная форма</th>
<th>Отрицательная форма</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I He She We You They</td>
<td>had worked ('d worked)</td>
<td>Had he she we you they worked?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I He She We You They</td>
<td>had not worked (hadn't worked)</td>
<td>had not worked (hadn't worked)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Утвердительная форма образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола to have в Past Simple (had) и Participle II смыслового глагола:

I (he / she / we / you / they) had read.

В вопросительной форме вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

Had I (he / she / we / you / they) read?

Отрицательная форма образуется при помощи отрицания not, которое ставится после вспомогательного глагола:

I (he / she / we / you / they) had not (hadn’t) read.
Случаи употребления Past Perfect:

1) Для выражения действия, которое произошло раньше другого действия в прошлом (оно выражено с помощью Past Simple):

He said (Past Simple) that he had already taken (Past Perfect) the book from the library (*m.e. он взял книгу до того, как сказал об этом*).

After she had cried, she felt better.

2) Для выражения действия, которое закончилось к определённому моменту в прошлом:

Момент в прошлом обычно указан с помощью наречия BY:

- by that time — к тому времени
- by the end of the year — к концу года
- by Saturday — к субботе
- by 12 o’clock — к 12-ти часам

We had translated the article by 5 o’clock.
They had finished the experiment by the end of the year.

3) В сложносочинённых предложениях с союзами hardly ... when, no sooner ... than (едва ... как; не успел и ... как) для выражения действия, предшествующего другому действию. При этом имеет место инверсия, т.е., глагол had занимает место перед подлежащим:

Hardly had he entered the room when he heard the noise.
Едва он вошёл в комнату, как услышал шум.

No sooner had I read the first page when mother called me.
Не успел я прочитать и первую страницу, как мама позвала меня.

Если в предложении представлена цепь последовательных действий, употребляется Past Simple!

He closed the window, took a book and sat down in the armchair.
**Exercise 1.** Open the brackets using the Past Perfect:

1. He (to do) all the work by 5 o’clock yesterday.
2. The pupils (not to write) the composition before the bell rang.
3. He went for a walk after he (to do) his lessons.
4. He (to finish) the work by the time you came?
5. When he went out, he remembered that he (to leave) his keys at home.
6. The delegation (to arrive) by last Sunday.
7. I already (to have) dinner when my friend came.
8. The lecture (to begin) by the time I entered the room.
9. When I rang, she already (to leave).
10. The students (to pass) their last exam by the 26th of June.

**Exercise 2.** Make up short dialogues, using the Past Perfect:

1. **I wonder (I’d like to know) had you started learning English before you came to study here?**
   **Yes, I had. I had started learning English before I came to study here.**

1. Had you studied psychology before he entered the University?
2. Had your classes already begun when you came to the University?
3. Had you done your lessons by this time yesterday?
4. Why hadn’t you invited me to the cinema?
5. How many English books had you read by the end of the year?
6. Had you arrived at the station by 6 o’clock?
7. Had you packed your things by the time the taxi arrived?
8. Had you translated this article by that time?

**Exercise 3.** Make the following sentences interrogative and negative:

Student A: Had John translated the article by last Monday?

Student B: No, he hadn’t translated the article by last Monday.

1. We had prepared our exercises by 7 o’clock.
2. I had found this book by the time you phoned me.
3. She had packed her things by that time.
4. He had left before I came back.
5. They had repaired the roof by Monday.
6. She wanted to know how I had got her telephone number.
7. My mother had prepared dinner by 2 o’clock.
8. The children went to bed after they had done their lessons.

**Exercise 4.** Answer the following questions using the Past Perfect:

**Student A:**

1. Why couldn’t you get into the flat? (to lose the key).
2. Why did she refuse to go to the cinema with you? (to see the film).
3. Why didn’t you see Ann on Sunday? (to go for a weekend).
4. Why did you come so soon from your holiday? (to spend all the money).
5. Why didn’t you cook the salad? (not to buy vegetables).
6. Why didn’t you ring Tom up? (to quarrel with him).
7. Why were you late for classes yesterday? (to miss the 8 o’clock train).

**Student B:**

1. Why didn’t you invite John to your party?
2. Because he had gone to Moscow.

**Exercise 5.** Complete the sentences:

1. Roger came to the theatre (когда пьеса уже началась).
2. They thought that (она ещё не пришла).
3. He couldn’t believe that we (сделали это сами).
4. Did you see him after (он закончил университет)?
5. The girl felt easier after she (поговорила с мамой).
6. When Mother came home (дети уже легли спать).
7. She didn’t want to speak to him (после того, как они поссорились).
8. When she arrived at the station (поезд уже ушёл).
9. We walked home after (закончили работу в саду).
10. I went to the beach after (они ушли).

**Exercise 6.** Translate into English:

1. Когда вы пришли, я уже выполнил своё домашнее задание.
2. К двум часам все уже прибыли на вокзал.
3. К тому времени, как моя сестра позвонила, гости ещё не собрались.
4. Сколько страниц этой книги они перевели к концу

**Exercise 7.** Make up sentences with the help of the conjunctions *hardly...when, no sooner...than.*

**Example:** He (to leave the room); the bomb (to explode).

*Hardly had he left the room when the bomb exploded.*

1. The guests (to leave); she (to go) upstairs.
2. The sun (to set); it (to become) very cold.
3. The teacher (to enter) the classroom; the pupils (to stand up).
4. They (to have) their dinner; the telephone (to ring).
5. He (to finish) his story; there (to be) a burst of laughter.
6. She (to explain) everything; he (to stop) listening.
7. She (to enter) the room; the light (to go out).
8. We (to pack) our things; it (to be) time to go to the station.
9. He (to open the door); a child (to run) to him.

**Exercise 8.** Put the verbs into the Past Simple or the Past Perfect:

1. She (to be) not at home. She (to go) out 15 minutes ago.
2. She (to know) why he (to come).
3. He showed us the bridge he (to build) in 1988.
4. By the time my friend (to come) I (to tidy) up my room.
5. When I (to come) home Granny already (to make) a cake.
6. Mother (to see) that Nick (not to wash) his hands.
7. Yesterday I (to find) a book that I (to lose) last summer.
8. He (to finish) his homework by 4 o’clock.
9. We (to finish) our work at 7 o’clock.
10. When they (to come) to the station, the train already (to leave).
Утвердительная форма образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола to be в Past Perfect (had been) и Participle I смыслового глагола:

I (he / she / we / you / they) had been reading.

В вопросительной форме первый вспомогательный глагол (had) ставится перед подлежащим:

*Had* I (he / she / we / you / they) been reading?

Отрицательная форма образуется при помощи отрицания not, которое ставится после первого вспомогательного глагола (had):

I (he / she / we / you / they) had not (hadn’t) been reading.

Случаи употребления Past Perfect Progressive:

1) Длительное действие, которое началось до определённого момента в прошлом и закончилось в этот момент:

I had been waiting for 2 hours when he came (т.е., он пришёл, и ожидание закончилось).

He felt tired because he had been playing football (т.е., он играл в футбол, но к моменту упоминания об этом он уже прекратил играть).
2) Длительное действие, которое началось до определённого момента в прошлом и всё ещё продолжалось в этот момент:

She *had been teaching* English for 2 years when we met (т.е., она преподавала английский ещё до того, как мы познакомились, и продолжала преподавать и после нашего знакомства).

When I first heard about him he *had been working* there for 5 months (т.е., он уже 5 лет проработал там к тому моменту, как я о нём услышал впервые, и продолжал работать и после этого).

В предложениях с *the Past Perfect Progressive* обычно указывается период времени, в течение которого происходит действие. Этот период может быть обозначен 3-мя способами:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>С помощью предлога <strong>FOR</strong> – в течение, на протяжении – (когда обозначается весь период, в течение которого длилось действие)</th>
<th><em>He had been working for 2 hours when we came.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>С помощью предлога <strong>SINCE</strong> – с, с тех пор как – (когда обозначается начальный момент действия)</td>
<td><em>She had been studying foreign languages since she became a student.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>С помощью обстоятельственных выражений типа all his life, all the year (month, day)</td>
<td><em>Jane said she had been writing all day.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Таким образом, употребление *the Past Perfect Progressive* характерно для сложных предложений:

He didn't remember how long he *had been sitting* there.

She *had been watching* TV for 2 hours when her parents *returned* home.

Чтобы не спутать Past Progressive и Past Perfect Progressive, нужно помнить, что Past Progressive употребляется для действия, совершавшегося в определённый момент в прошлом, а Past Perfect Progressive – для действия, происходившего в определённый период времени в прошлом.
Compare:

When I looked out of the window, it had been raining (в тот момент, когда я выглянул в окно, дождя уже не было, но он шёл до этого в течение какого-то периода)

When I looked out of the window, it was raining (дождь шёл именно в тот момент, когда я выглянул в окно)

Exercise 1. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative:

Student A: Student B:

Had John already gone to bed when you phoned him?

No, he hadn’t yet gone to bed when I phoned him.

1. He had been working there for many years;
2. It had been raining for 2 hours when I left home.
3. I had been reading for about an hour when he came.
4. She had been working for a long time when her brother came.
5. Her aunt had been living in Moscow for 5 years when the war began.
6. The boy felt very tired as he had been working in the garden.

Exercise 2. Open the brackets using the Past Perfect Progressive:

1. I was tired. I (to work) all day long.
2. The room was empty but there was a smell of cigarettes. Somebody (to smoke) in the room.
3. He turned to the girl who (to listen) to the conversation with interest.
4. We (to work) for 2 hours when Pete joined us.
5. It (to snow) heavily for 3 hours when we left the house.
6. She (to listen) to the music for 2 hours when her sister returned home.
7. I (to work) in this office since I returned from abroad.
8. My grandfather (to work) at a factory for 25 years before he retired.
9. They (to write) each other letters for 2 months.
**Exercise 3.** Make up the sentences complete combining the suitable parts from the right and left-hand columns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. They had been experimenting for a year</th>
<th>a. before she could buy a fur coat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. She had been studying Spanish for 3 years</td>
<td>b. before they achieved important results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. We had been studying the Past Perfect Progressive for a week</td>
<td>c. before she became a pensioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. She had been saving up money for 3 months</td>
<td>d. before his first book came out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. He had been writing little stories for some years</td>
<td>e. before we wrote a test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. She had been working at school for 25 years</td>
<td>f. before she went to Spain as a tourist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 4.** Complete the questions and make up short dialogues:

1. How long had your family been living in Grodno before ... (to move to Borisov)?
2. How long had they been saving money before ... (to buy a new car)?
3. How long had she been discussing this question before ... (to arrive at an agreement)?
4. How long had your brother been training before ... (to set a record)?
5. How long had you been listening to this record before ... (to understand every word)?
6. How long had you been waiting for your friend before ... (to come)?

**Exercise 5.** Make up sentences with the Past Perfect Progressive:

**Example:** Mother / teach literature for 20 years / retire.  
Mother had been teaching literature for 20 years before she retired.
1. He / compose music for 2 years / become popular
2. Your friend / live in Vitebsk for 10 years / move to Minsk
3. He / work as an engineer for 7 years / become a good specialist
4. She / take this medicine for a week / recover
5. He / play chess for 5 years / become the world chess champion
6. They / date for 3 years / get married

**Exercise 6.** Translate into English:
1. Он казал, что работает с пяти часов. 2. Том играл в течение двух часов в тот момент, когда мама позвала его обедать. 3. Она чувствовала себя лучше, так как отдыхала весь вечер. 4. Он работает в банке с тех пор, как вернулся из Англии. 5. Я ждала в течение часа, прежде чем он позвонил. 6. Он учил английский с тех пор как поступил в университет. 7. Весь месяц мы готовились к экзамену. 8. Они сидели в классе в течение 15 минут, когда пришёл учителъ. 9. Как долго ты учил это стихотворение, пока запомнил его?

**Exercise 7.** Open the brackets choosing between the Past Perfect Progressive and the Past Progressive:
1. When I arrived she (to wait) for me. But she was angry because she (to wait for a very long time.
2. John (to drive) the car when the accident happened.
3. The sky (cleared) though it (to rain) still.
4. That day the sun (to shine) since morning and the sky was blue.
5. The children looked tired. They (to walk) since early morning.
6. Jim was on his knees on the floor. He (to look) for his pen.

**TEST**

**TASK I.** Open the brackets:
1. By eleven she (to finish) her work.
2. Lisa (to play) the piano since mother went to work.
3. After he (to translate) the text he (to return) the dictionary to me.
4. She said that she (to live) in Minsk all her life.
5. The child (to cry) for almost an hour when his aunt (to come).
6. I couldn’t phone her because I (to lose) her number.
7. By 2 o’clock the teacher (to ask) all the students.
8. We (not to reach) the station when it began to rain.
9. He (to wake up) by the time I came.
**TASK II.** Open the brackets:
1. I (to listen) to British rock music since I (to be) a little child.
2. The old man (to be) glad that he (to find) a seat near the window.
3. By the time the train (to reach) the city, we (to make friends) with the passengers.
4. All my friends (to be) glad that I (to pass) that difficult exam successfully.
5. Hardly we (to pack) our things when it (to be) high time to go to the station.
6. When I came home, mother (to tell) me that she (to receive) a letter from grandfather.
7. No sooner we (to enter) the hall when the meeting (to begin).
8. Nobody (to know) what (to happen) to them.
9. How long he (to wait) before you (to come)?
10. Irene (to study) for 2 years when we (to meet).
11. He (to read) the book by 10 o’clock.
12. We (to talk) for an hour when he suddenly (to interrupt) us.
13. She (to spend) all her free time in the Internet since her parents (to buy) her a computer.
14. He (to study) French before he (to enter) the University.
15. I (to work) with Michael for a year when I (to understand) that I liked him.

**TASK III.** Translate into English:
1. Она написала очень хорошую статью после того, как внимательно изучила проблему.
2. Едва прозвенел звонок, как студенты выбежали из аудитории.
3. Успел ли учитель дать детям домашнее задание до того, как окончился урок?
4. Он закончил книгу к понедельнику.
5. Как долго ты учился играть на гитаре, прежде чем собрал свою группу?
6. Не успел я закрыть глаза, как зазвонил будильник.
7. Мы упаковали наши вещи к тому времени, как приехало такси.
8. Джон умылся, почистил зубы, пошёл на кухню и начал готовить завтрак.
9. Они готовились два года, прежде чем приняли участие в соревновании.
10. Он закончил работу к тому времени, как мы пришли.
11. Она жила здесь с тех пор, как получила новую работу.
12. Я чувствовал себя усталым, потому что работал в саду.
Unit 6. Future Simple and Future Progressive

A. Future Simple
B. Future Progressive

Study the following rules of the formation of Future Simple in the English language. Ask questions, if any.

A. Future Simple

Утвердительная форма образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов shall (для первого лица единственного и множественного числа), will (для всех остальных лиц) и основного глагола в инфинитиве без частицы to:

I shall read.
He will read.

Примечание: В современном английском языке есть тенденция к употреблению вспомогательного глагола will для всех лиц.

В вопросительной форме вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

Shall I read?
Will he read?

Отрицательная форма образуется при помощи отрицания not, которое ставится после вспомогательного глагола:

I shall not (shan’t) read.
He will not (won’t) read.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Утвердительная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительная форма</th>
<th>Отрицательная форма</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall work</td>
<td>Shall I work?</td>
<td>I shall not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He will work</td>
<td>Will he work?</td>
<td>He will not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She will work</td>
<td>Will she work?</td>
<td>She will not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We shall work</td>
<td>Shall we work?</td>
<td>We shall not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You will work</td>
<td>Will you work?</td>
<td>You will not work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will work</td>
<td>Will they work?</td>
<td>They will not work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Future Simple употребляется для выражения обычных действий, которые произойдут или будут происходить в будущем. Future Simple обозначает как однократное, так и повторяющееся действие и переводится на русский язык будущим временем глагола совершенного и несовершенного вида. Future Simple не употребляется в придаточных предложениях условия и времени - в этих случаях употребляется Present Simple.

He will go to the country if the weather is fine.

Future Simple употребляется со словами и словосочетаниями:
- **tomorrow** - завтра,
- **the day after tomorrow** - послезавтра,
- **next week/month/year** - на следующей неделе/ в будущем месяце/ году,
- **in** - через,
- **soon** - скоро,
- **one of these days** - на днях,
- **in the near future** - в ближайшем будущем.

**Exercise 1.** Open the brackets using the Future Simple:

1. We (to go) to the park in summer.
2. I (not to phone) her tonight.
3. Tomorrow I (to go) to the cinema.
4. Perhaps this doctor (to help) you.
5. My friend (to come) to see me tomorrow.
6. He (not to go) to the Hermitage tomorrow.
7. It’s hot, I (to open) the window.
8. Maybe we (to have) enough money some day.
9. I (not to tell) anyone what happened.
10. His sister (to finish) school next year.

**Exercise 2.** Open the brackets using the Future Simple:

1. My niece (to take) a cold shower tomorrow morning.
2. I am afraid, it (to be) foggy tomorrow.
3. She (to put on) a new dress tomorrow evening.
4. I (not to wake up) at six o’clock tomorrow.
5. He (to pay) by credit card.
6. My nephew (to visit) me next Sunday.
7. Soon I (to go) shopping.
8. When the concert (to start)?
9. She (to help) her mother about the house the day after tomorrow.
10. I (not to give) you your money back.

**Exercise 3.** Make the following sentences interrogative and negative:

**Student A:**

1. He will remember this event all his life.
2. Wait a moment. I shall call my chief.
3. Tomorrow I shall apologize to him.
4. Mother will send the parcel.
5. I am sure that I shall recognize him.
6. The secretary will type these letters in half an hour.
7. We shall study French at school.
8. She will sweep the floor in two hours.
9. There will be a lot of people at the lecture today.
10. Her father will work at a shoe factory.
11. Kate will help Pete with math next week.
12. His sister will teach physics at the University.
13. I’ll be in tomorrow morning.
14. We shall write exercises on the blackboard.
15. He will meet his friend at the railway station tomorrow.
16. They will go to the theatre tomorrow.
17. He’ll be out tomorrow.

**Student B:**

1. Will you go to the cinema tomorrow?
2. I shall not go to the cinema tomorrow because I will be busy.

**Exercise 4.** Make the following sentences interrogative and negative:

**Student A:**

1. The teacher will give the students good marks at the next classes.
2. They will go to the zoo tomorrow.
3. The talk will be very interesting.
4. He will finish school next year.

**Student B:**

1. Will you have to hurry?
2. No, I won’t have to hurry as I will have plenty of time.
5. They will pick vegetables in the kitchen garden tomorrow.
6. We shall have examinations next month.
7. I shall forget about it.
8. We shall have dinner in an hour
9. They will go home by train in two days.
10. I shall buy a new coat next week.
11. He will remember us.
12. Soon she will send a letter to her friend.
13. I shall water the flowers the day after tomorrow.
14. My parents will go to the south next summer.
15. There will be a lot of work to do tomorrow.
16. He will leave for London in three days.
17. They will work on a farm next autumn.
18. I shall be able to go to classes soon.
19. It will snow tomorrow morning.
20. I’ll have to stay at home this evening.
21. She will look after her little sister tomorrow evening.
22. I shall have bread and butter and tea for breakfast tomorrow.

**Exercise 5.** Put the verbs into the Present Simple or the Future Simple:

1. As soon as Rolf (to come), his parents (to give) him his birthday present.
2. If my cousin (to buy) a new dress, she (to be) happy.
3. Tim (not to have) problems at the University if he (to work) hard.
4. When it (to rain), they (to go) home.
5. When I (to be) sixty years old, I (to lead) quiet life in the country.
6. As soon as Philip (to recover) he (to go) to school.
7. We (not to climb) this mountain before we (not to listen) to the weather cast.
8. If I (not to help) Dolly, she (to be late).
9. When my neighbour (to drop) in again tomorrow, I (to make) a cake for her.
10. I (to feel) normal again if the weather (to change) for the better.
11. When he (to be) sixty years old, he (to retire).

**Exercise 6.** Finish the following sentences:

1. I would like to know when …
2. He couldn’t remember when …
3. Tell us if …
4. Everybody wants to know when …
5. He will buy a car if …
6. This evening will be wonderful if …
7. My nephew will leave for London if …
8. She will send her mother a telegram as soon as …
9. Mike will forget about all his studies if …
10. Marion will see Felix when …

**Exercise 7.** Translate into English.
1. Мы поедем завтра утром, если будет хорошая погода.
2. Он не сможет придти к тебе сегодня, если ему придется остаться после работы.
3. Вам тоже придется рано вставать?
4. Как только он вернется, я вам позвоню.
5. Когда у вас будет компьютер?
6. Его родители будут рады, если он женится.
7. Боюсь, что мне придется пропустить несколько уроков, у меня больная мать.
8. Где она будет работать, когда окончит университет?

**Exercise 8.** Make up short dialogues, using the Future Simple:

1. Robert (get up early).
2. Kate (climb the mountains).
3. The secretary (type the report).
4. My sister (arrive) tomorrow.
5. The students (go sightseeing).
6. She (get to the University by bus).
7. He (stay at his aunt’s).
8. Mr. Green (be in Minsk on business).
9. She (call on you).
10. They (take a taxi).
11. There (be a demonstration in Hyde Park).
12. They (help each other).
13. Your relatives (miss the train).
14. Mr. Black (look through the letters).
15. They (discuss this problem).
Утвердительная форма образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола в будущем времени (shall be, will be) и причастия настоящего времени основного глагола:

I shall be reading.
He will be reading.

В вопросительной форме первый вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

Will he be working?

Отрицательная форма образуется при помощи отрицания not, которое ставится после первого вспомогательного глагола:

I shall not be working

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Утвердительная форма</th>
<th>Вопросительная форма</th>
<th>Отрицательная форма</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall be reading</td>
<td>Shall I be reading?</td>
<td>I shall not be reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He will be reading</td>
<td>Will he be reading?</td>
<td>He will not be reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She will be reading</td>
<td>Will she be reading?</td>
<td>She will not be reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We shall be reading</td>
<td>Shall we be reading?</td>
<td>We shall not be reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You will be reading</td>
<td>Will you be reading?</td>
<td>You will not be reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will be reading</td>
<td>Will they be reading?</td>
<td>They will not be reading</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Progressive употребляется для выражения будущего действия в процессе его совершения, т.е. незаконченное длительное действие. Момент совершения действия в будущем может быть обозначен фразами типа:

- at six o’clock - в шесть часов,
- from five till seven o’clock - с пяти до семи часов,
- he whole day - весь день,
- at that time - в это время,
- all day long - весь день,
• at noon - в полдень,
• at midnight - в полночь,
• when he comes - когда он придет.

**Future Progressive** переводится на русский язык будущим временем глагола несовершенного вида.

**Exercise 1.** Put the verbs into the Future Progressive:

1. At six o’clock tomorrow I (to watch) TV.
2. He (to wait) for you from five till seven o’clock tomorrow.
3. Tomorrow at this time you (to go) by train to Kiev.
4. She (to walk) with her friend when you come to see her.
5. I (not to do) my homework at nine o’clock.
6. I still (to work) when you return.
7. At seven o’clock tomorrow Tim (to watch) the football match on TV.
8. I hope you (not to sleep) when I come.
9. What you (to do) from 10 till 12 tomorrow?
10. I’ll be busy at this time. I (to translate) the article.
11. Tomorrow evening they (to travel) to Paris by plane.

**Exercise 2.** Put the verbs into the Future Progressive:

**Student A:**

1. What’s her sister doing?
2. She is packing her things, isn’t she?
3. Are you waiting for your friend?
4. Where are you hurrying to?
5. My friend is staying at a hotel.
6. They are talking to my friend.
7. My son is having his English.
8. They are not smoking, are they?
9. I am having dinner at a restaurant in New York.

**Student B:**

I will be having classes.
Exercise 3. Open the brackets using the Future Simple or the Future Progressive:

1. What you (to put on) for the carnival?
2. When you come, we (to have) tea with cakes together.
3. I hate you and I (not to help) you.
4. I (to see) you next Monday.
5. Nick (to play) the piano from three till five o’clock the day after tomorrow.
6. This time tomorrow I (to arrive) at the airport at seven o’clock.
7. What your family (to do) at this time tomorrow.
8. At five o’clock we (to sit) in the train and (to go) to Madrid.
9. Join us. From six till eight we (to play) tennis.
10. Next week we (to go) on a picnic.
11. Tomorrow evening I (to take) my driving test.
12. I wonder, what (to happen) to us in two days?
13. What your father (to do) tomorrow?
14. When you (to come) to see us?

Exercise 4. Make the following sentences interrogative or negative:

Student A:          Student B:

1. I shall be writing to my father at seven o’clock on Thursday.        Will you be sleeping at 7 tomorrow?
2. The girls will be making their dresses when their parents come.        No, I won’t be sleeping at 7 tomorrow. I will be having breakfast.
3. We shall be having our classes from three till six o’clock the day after tomorrow.
4. The students will be preparing for their exams the whole day.
5. Susan will be typing when her boss rings up.
6. We shall be cleaning our room from seven till nine o’clock.

Exercise 5. Make the following sentences interrogative and negative using the Future Simple or the Future Progressive:

1. She (to ring) you up as soon as she (to come) home tomorrow.
2. My son (to do) his homework at six o’clock tomorrow.
3. When she comes home tomorrow, her family (to have) supper.
4. Tomorrow I (to read) a book.
5. You (to play) tennis in two days.
6. I shall (to visit) my grandmother next time.
7. We (to play) golf from three till five on Sunday.
8. They (to wait) for their friends all day long.

**Exercise 6.** Make up short dialogues:

1. Kate (solve a problem from two till three o’clock tomorrow).
2. His uncle (gather mushrooms at noon).
3. The boys (play football at four o’clock tomorrow).
4. The doctor (examine his patient this time the day after tomorrow).
5. The student (have their English classes from twelve till one o’clock tomorrow).

---

**TEST**

**TASK I.** Open the brackets:
1. I (to have) a walk at this time tomorrow.
2. You (to play) the piano if I sing?
3. Next week I (to buy) a present for my mum and (to make) a postcard for her birthday.
4. What you (to do) at six o’clock tomorrow?
5. If you (to come) on time, we’ll be having supper and you (to be able) to join us.
6. Kate (to be) 20 next month.
7. Next summer I (to go) to Scotland.
8. I hope he (to overcome) all the difficulties.
9. Don’t make a noise. You (to wake up) the child.

**TASK II.** Open the brackets:
1. He (to drive) a car soon.
2. The old man (to work) in the garden from 7 till 9 o’clock tomorrow morning.
3. She (to do) her flat at 7 o’clock tomorrow.
4. The artist (to paint) from nature in an hour.
5. What programme we (to watch)?
6. When our classes (to be over), we shall go home.
7. If you (not to open) the window it (to be) hot in the room soon.
8. Jane and Mary (to lie) in the sun at this time tomorrow.
9. The dog (to run) on the lawn if you (not to tie) it.
10. I think he (to read) “Hound of the Baskervilles” with pleasure.
11. When Ron (to return) the books to the library?
12. He (to speak) English fluently and correctly if he works hard.
13. Soon we (to buy) a computer.
14. I think this new book (to make) a great impression on readers.
15. He (to repair) his car the whole day tomorrow.

**TASK III.** Translate into English:
1. По моему мнению, ему будет очень трудно сдать экзамен. 2. Мне жаль, но ты будешь разочарован. 3. Что ты будешь делать в свободное время? 4. Когда Джон пойдет за покупками, в доме никого не будет. 5. Когда ты переедешь в наш город? 6. Что ты будешь делать, когда закончишь университет? 7. Когда мама вернется, мы будем учить новые слова. 8. Почтальон принесет почту завтра. 9. Они будут жить в большом доме на берегу реки. 10. Родители накажут мальчика, если он придет поздно. 11. Когда дедушка придет, мы будем спать. 12. Я буду ждать его весь день.
Unit 7. Future Perfect and Future Perfect Progressive

A. Future Perfect
B. Future Perfect Progressive

A. Future Perfect

Future Perfect (Будущее совершенное время) обозначает действие, которое завершится к определенному моменту в будущем.

- She will have finished.
- She will not have finished.
- Will she have finished?
  Yes, she will. No, she will not. (No, she won't.)

Будущее совершенное время часто употребляется с обстоятельствами "by then" - к тому времени, "by... o'clock" - к ... часу, "by the end of" - к концу:
- By 2 o'clock we'll have discussed all the problems.
- The car will soon have done 100,000 miles.

Exercise 1. Fill in the blanks with the Future Perfect of the verbs shown in brackets.
Example: In two months time Cynthia and Karl will have been married for fifty years.
1. The builders say they __________ the leaking roof by the weekend. (repair)
2. Hopefully the boss __________ all the candidates by 6.30. (interview)
3. The company __________ 200,000 bottles of cava before the end of the year. (export)
4. Judy has promised her agent that by September she __________ the first three chapters of her new novel. (write)
5. Poor Harry! If he doesn’t get any sleep tonight, he __________ for almost three days! (not / sleep)
6. Next time you see me I __________ my driving test. (take)
7. By the end of the tour the band __________ in over 30 countries. (play)
8. We hope that by 4 o’clock this afternoon we __________ the contract on our new house. (sign)
9. The director is confident that by December company profits __________ by more than 150%. (rise)
10. There’s no point going to the cinema now. The film __________. (already / start)

Exercise 2. Use the future perfect to put the beginnings and ends together:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BEGINNINGS</th>
<th>ENDS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I (not finish) the report by Monday,</td>
<td>and we’ll be able to get a smaller house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a couple of years the children (leave) home</td>
<td>and it’s needed for Monday morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On our next wedding anniversary</td>
<td>I (drive) for fourteen hours nonstop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I get home tonight</td>
<td>I (work) for forty years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I retire</td>
<td>we (be) married for twenty-five years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the future perfect tense:

1. I hope they (repair) this road by the time we come back next summer.
2. By the end of next week my wife (do) her spring cleaning and we'll all be able to relax again.
3. Yes, I make jam every week. I (make) about 200 kilos by the end of the summer.
4. In two months' time he (finish) his preliminary training and will be starting work.
5. He spends all his spare time planting trees. He says that by the end of next year he (plant) 2,000.
6. - I'll be back again at the end of next month.
   - I hope I (pass) my driving test by then. If I have, I'll meet your train.
7. Come back in an hour. I (do) my packing by then and we'll be able to have a talk.
8. When he reaches Land's End he (walk) 1,500 miles.
9. He's only 35 but he's started losing his hair already. He (lose) it all by the time he's 50.
10. His father left him J400,000, but he lives so extravagantly that he (spend) it all before he's 30.
11. By the end of next year I (work) for him for 45 years.

**Exercise 4.** Put the verbs in brackets into the future perfect tense:

1. In a fortnight's time we (take) our exam.
2. I (finish) this book by tomorrow evening.
3. By this time tomorrow we (have) our injections.
4. By the end of next year I (be) here twenty-five years.
5. I'll still be here next summer but Tom (leave).
6. I (finish) this job in twenty minutes.
7. By next winter they (build) four houses in that field.
8. When we reach Valparaiso we (sail) all round the world.
9. At the rate he is going he (spend) all his money by the time he is twenty-one.
10. By this time next year I (save) £250.
11. By the time we get to the party everything (be) eaten.
12. The train (leave) before we reach the station.
13. If I continue with my diet I (lose) 10 kilos by the end of the month.
14. By the end of my university course I (attend) 1,200 lectures.
15. By the end of this week my illness (cost) me £100.
16. By the time that he leaves school his parents (spend) £25,000 on his education.
17. By the end of the term I (read) all twelve volumes.
18. When you come back I (finish) all the housework.
19. The police (hear) of the theft by this time.
20. We (drink) all that wine by the end of the year.
21. On the fourth of next month he (be) in prison for ten years.
22. When we reach Crewe we (do) half of the journey.
23. At this rate you (break) all the wine glasses by the end of the month.
24. If we don't hurry the sun (rise) before we reach the top.

**Exercise 5.** For each situation there are 2 future events. Combine the 2 future events by using the future perfect. Use before or by the time. The first 5 are new year's resolutions. There may be more than one answer.

1. First event: I will stop smoking.
   Second event: Spring will arrive.
2. First event: I will lose 25 pounds.
   Second event: I will see you in the summer.
3. First event: I will learn to cook.
   Second event: I will make my family a gourmet meal.
4. First event: I will apply to college.
   Second event: July will come.
5. First event: I will write a new résumé on MyEnglishTeacher.net.
   Second event: The end of January will come.
6. First event: She will finish her Ph.D. thesis.
   Second event: Julie will graduate from Oxford University in May.
7. First event: The doctor will return.
   Second event: Noon will arrive.
8. First event: We will fix your car.
   Second event: You will come back.
9. First event: Her pictures will be developed.
   Second event: Mike will finish lunch.
10. First event: Pigs will fly.
    Second event: Richard will do his homework.

**Exercise 6. Life events**

1. Divide the class into groups of three or four. Each group brainstorms a list of events that may happen to them in the future (get married, have children, get a degree, graduate from the university, finish the English program, return home, buy a new car, etc.).
2. Each student in the group works independently to make five sentences that use two of the items on the list. They may use an item more than once. For example, a student may decide to combine the items get married and graduate from the university into a sentence such as *By the time I get married, I will have graduated from the university.*
3. Each student reads his/her sentences to the group. The group decides if the sentences are grammatically correct.

**Exercise 7.** A romantic novelist writes 300-page books. She writes ten pages a day, and takes no holidays. Use the future perfect to answer the questions.

**Student A:** How many pages will she have written after ten days?

**Student B:**

She will have written … pages after ten days.
1. How many pages will she have written after ten days? After a month? After a year? After ten years?
2. If she starts today, how soon will she have finished her first book? How many books will she have written a year from now?
3. She earns $100,000 per book. How much money will she have made altogether after her 120\textsuperscript{th} book?

\textbf{B. Future Perfect Progressive}

\textbf{Future Perfect Progressive} (Будущее совершенное длительное время) образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола to be в форме Future Perfect (shall have been, will have been) и причастия I смыслового глагола:

- + I (we) shall have been writing
  He (she, it, you, they) will have been writing
- - I (we) shall not have been writing
  He (she, it, you, they) will not have been writing
- ? Shall I (we) have been writing?
  Will he (she, it, you, they) have been writing?

\textbf{Употребление и перевод Future Perfect Progressive.}

Future Perfect Continuous употребляется для выражения будущего действия, которое, начавшись в будущем, будет продолжаться в течение некоторого периода времени до наступления другого, более позднего будущего действия или момента:

- Before the new machine is stopped to-morrow morning, it will have been working for three hours.
  До того как новая машина будет остановлена завтра утром, она будет работать три часа.
- You will have been studying English for five years by the next spring.
  Весной будущего года исполнится пять лет, как вы изучаете английский язык.

\textbf{Note:} В повседневной речи Future Perfect Progressive употребляется редко и обычно заменяется Future Perfect или Future Indefinite.
Exercise 1. Translate the sentences:

1) I will have been waiting for 20 minutes until he comes to my place.
2) She will have been studying at the university for three years before she finishes it.
3) He will have been working at the office for six more months before he gets permanence.
4) The children will have been playing in the garden until their mother comes back.
5) I will have been reading the morning paper for 20 minutes before the bus arrives at my station.
6) We'll have been discussing the matter for an hour before the manager arrives.
7) I will have been translating the article for 30 minutes before you come.
8) We will have been learning Italian for three years before we go to Italy.
9) I will have been watching them for three minutes until they leave my area.
10) I think it will have been raining all the time until we arrive home.
11) He will have been singing for half an hour before he starts the show.
12) The travelers will have been walking for three hours before they stop for a rest.

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks with the Future Perfect Progressive of the verbs in brackets:

1. Catherine Zeta-Jones (to act) ______________ in America for 12 years by the year 2010.
2. By the time I retire, I (to write) ______________ movie reviews for more than 30 years.
3. By the time the movie will stop, it (to rain) ___________ outside for 4 hours at least.
4. By the time he turns 30, Elijah Woods (to work) ____________ in the entertainment business for 32 years.
5. At the end of his career, Kevin Spacey (to entertain) _____________ audiences for many years.
6. Stephen Spielberg (to make) _____________ great movies for a long time when he will decide to stop.
7. At the end of the show, I (to eat) _______________ continuously.
8. By the time he stops, my friend (to act) ______________ for most of his life.
9. My cousin (to exercise) ____________ for 2 years next week in preparation
    for a role in a movie.
10. They (to think) _____________ about whether to go see the new movie or
    not for half an hour by the time it begins tonight.

**Exercise 3.** For each situation there are 2 pieces of information: when the action or
situation, and a question. Using this information, make a sentence with the future
perfect progressive. Use **by the time** if necessary. Number 1 has been done for
you. There may be more than one answer.

1. Action/situation: Doctors began using morphine in the 1860s.
   Student A: By 2010, how long will doctors
   have been using morphine?
   Student B: By 2010, doctors will have
   been using morphine for
   about 150 years.

   Question: By May, how long will I have been writing my book?
   Answer:
3. Action/situation: I became a computer programmer in 1997. I am still a com-
    puter programmer.
   Question: In 2050, how long will I have been a computer programmer?
   Answer:
4. Action/situation: Brian started looking for a job on Sunday.
   Question: On Tuesday, how long will Brian have been looking for a job?
   Answer:
5. Action/situation: Ever since Mei drank it in 2001, she has preferred drinking
    black tea over anything else.
   Question: In 2004, how long will Mei have preferred drinking black tea?
   Answer:
6. Action/situation: People began taking pictures in the 1830’s.
   Question: By 2080, how long will people have been taking pictures?
   Answer:
   Question: In 2005, how long will we have been vacationing in Hawaii?
   Answer:
8. Action/situation: I lent Jimmy $20 on Tuesday, and he said that he was going to
    return the money on Thursday. Today is Saturday.
   Question: By tomorrow, how long will Jimmy have owed me money?
   Answer:
   Question: By the end of this year, how long will MyEnglishTeacher.net have been teaching English to the world?
   Answer:

10. Action/situation: I moved to Seoul in 1998. I have lived there ever since.
    Question: By the end of the year, how long will I have been living in Seoul?
    Answer:

    **TEST**

**TASK I.** Use future perfect simple or future perfect progressive.

1. I came to Spain in 1982. Next year I (be)________________ here 20 years.
2. Where on earth is Tony? I'm tired of waiting for him. Soon we (wait)__________ here for an hour.
3. Well, Mary, in six months we (be)_____________ married 25 years. How about a party to celebrate?
4. I'm going to be a very rich man. I'm sure that by the time I'm 40 I (make)___________ my first million.
5. Alex: Well, Rosie will be in Madrid by now.
   Jim: No, she won't. Her plane (not/land)________ yet.
6. Once this room is finished, we (paint)________________ six of the seven rooms in the house. Not bad for two days' work.
7. Do you think you (finish)____________ writing that report by the time I get back?
8. Alex: Where's Julia? Is she coming or not?
   Jim: She was here but she (left)____________ by now. She said she was going at three o'clock. It's half past three now.

**TASK II.** Complete each sentence with the Future Continuous or Future Perfect form of a verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>cycle</th>
<th>destroy</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>interview</th>
<th>join</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>perform</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>talk</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. This time tomorrow we … to the airport.
2. We are really late. By the time we get there, Kate and Joe … without us.
3. Tom Norton is ill, unfortunately, so Chris Hunter … tonight instead of him.
4. Next year I … a teacher for ten years.
5. During this part of your training you … with elderly patients with a variety of health problems.
6. … (Linda and Kate) us later this evening?
7. By the end of the holiday I … nearly 500 kilometres.
8. Unfortunately, the fire is burning so strongly it … a large part of the forest by the end of today.
9. I hope I … somewhere else this time next year. I hate this flat.
10. Richard Hard … about his experiences in the Antarctic in a special pro-
    gramme on Monday.
11. By the end of the week we … about 3,000 tickets.
12. We … candidates next Thursday and Friday.

**TASK III.** Choose between the Future Simple, Future Progressive, Future Perfect
and Future Perfect Progressive to complete each sentence.

1. My parents ... *(arrive)* soon to collect me from school after the tennis match.
2. By this time next month I ... *(finish)* all my exams.
3. "Do you think you ... *(mark)* most of the homework essays by nine o'clock?" the
    headmistress asked.
4. By 1st September 1997 I ... *(work)* as a teacher for ten years.
5. "The lesson ... *(start)* in about ten minutes, so don't go away!" OUT teacher said.
6. These examination candidates... *(write)* for over two hours before they are al-
    lowed to leave the room!
7. "What... you ... *(do)* this time next Monday?" - "I... *(go)* on holiday to Ireland".
8. He ... *(work)* for ten days before he receives his pay.
9. The builders ... *(finish)* most of the work by Saturday.
Unit 8. Active and Passive Voice

A. Formation and Basic Meanings

B. Changing from Active into Passive

A. Formation and Basic Meanings

В английском языке предложения могут быть как в активном (действительном) залоге, так и в пассивном (страдательном) залоге.

В предложениях действительного залога подлежащее само выполняет действие, выраженное глаголом.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The dog</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>the boy.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pooja will present her research at the conference.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scientists have conducted experiments to test the hypothesis.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

В предложениях страдательного залога над подлежащим совершается действие, выраженное глаголом.

| The boy was bitten by the dog. |
| Research will be presented by Pooja at the conference. |
| Experiments have been conducted to test the hypothesis. |

(agent performing action has been omitted.)
Правило образования пассивного залога

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Правила</th>
<th>Примеры</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>to be + Past Participle</strong></td>
<td>You will be paid $600 to start with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Пассивный залог образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола <strong>to be</strong> в нужном времени, лице и числе (is, are, was, were, have been, etc.) и <strong>причастия прошедшего времени</strong> смыслового глагола (taught, built, sold, answered, etc.): (be) taught, (be) built, (be) sold, (be) answered.</td>
<td>The car is being repaired now. The roof was damaged by the storm yesterday. The letter wasn’t received yesterday. Will you be allowed to go to Europe? Why hasn’t the mail been delivered yet? The documents are being typed now, aren’t they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Только <strong>переходные глаголы</strong> (глаголы, требующие после себя <strong>прямого дополнения</strong>) могут употребляться в страдательном залоге. <strong>НО:</strong></td>
<td>The building was destroyed in 2007. English is spoken here. Everything will have been done by Tuesday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Некоторые переходные глаголы никогда не используются в страдательном залоге. Это глаголы, обозначающие <strong>состояние или отношение:</strong></td>
<td>John resembles his father. (John looks like his father.) The hat becomes you. (You look smart in it.) He lacks confidence. (There is no confidence in him.) Will this suit you? (Will it be suitable for you?) She has many good qualities. (She possesses many good qualities.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ To become</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ To fit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ To have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ To lack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ To resemble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✓ To suit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>В английском языке существуют глаголы, требующие после себя <strong>двух дополнений</strong>, которые также могут употребляться в страдательном залоге:</td>
<td>My father gave me this watch. (Active)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To allow</td>
<td>1. I was given this watch by my father.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To give</td>
<td>2. The watch was given to me by my father.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To grant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To lend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To offer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To pay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To promise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To teach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>➢ To tell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Если в предложении действительного залога имеется два дополнения, то любое из них может быть подлежащим в страдательном залоге.

Глаголы, требующие после себя предложного дополнения, также употребляются в страдательном залоге. При этом предлог всегда стоит рядом с глаголом.

- To account for
- To appeal to
- To comment on
- To depend on
- To insist on
- To interfere with
- To laugh at
- To listen to
- To rely on
- To wait for

А также многие другие глаголы.

В разговорной речи вместо вспомогательного глагола to be может использоваться глагол to get, чтобы подчеркнуть, что действие произошло случайно, неожиданно или что мы что-то сделали себе сами (по значению эти действия не пассивные, например, to get married, to get dressed, etc)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Употребление пассивного залога</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Страдательный залог употребляется:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. когда агент (человек, который осуществляет действие) неизвестен, неважен или и понят из контекста.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. чтобы сделать высказывание более вежливым или формальным</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Caroline was also still being talked about.  
He had never been spoken to that way in his life.  
These pictures must be looked at again and again.

She got sunburnt last week.   
The eggs got broken.   
We got dressed in five minutes.

My car was stolen yesterday. (unknown agent)  
The road repairs were completed last week. (unimportant agent)  
The kidnappers have been arrested. (by the police – obvious agent)  

My new suit has been burnt. (Not: You have burnt my new suit.)
nym.

3. когда само действие более важно, чем агенс (в новостях, инструкциях, заголовках, рекламных объявлениях и др.)

4. чтобы уделить особое значение агенсу.

5. чтобы избежать «неуклюжих» предложений.

Taking pictures is not allowed. (written notice)
The local bank was robbed in the morning. (news report)
The Tower of London was built by William the Conqueror.
I was surprised by Don’s decision to give up his job and move to Sydney. (Awkward: Don’s decision to give up his job and move to Sydney surprised me.)

Страдательный залог не употребляется, когда прямое дополнение выражено:
1. инфинитивом или герундием
2. придаточным предложением с союзом that
3. возвратным местоимением
4. существительным с притяжательным местоимением, которое относится к тому же лицу, что и подлежащее предложения.

We arranged to meet at five.
I saw that he knew it.
He hurt himself.
He cut his finger.

B. Changing from Active into Passive

Changing from Active into Passive
При изменении предложения из действительного в страдательный залог, дополнение действительного залога становится подлежащим в страдательном залоге, а подлежащее действительного залога становится агенсом в страдательном залоге.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Действительный залог</th>
<th>Сказуемое</th>
<th>Дополнение</th>
<th>Агенс</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bell</td>
<td>invented</td>
<td>the telephone.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Страдательный залог</td>
<td>The telephone</td>
<td>was invented</td>
<td>by Bell.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Passive Verb Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tenses</th>
<th>Active Voice</th>
<th>Passive Voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Simple</strong></td>
<td>They repair cars.</td>
<td>Cars are repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Simple</strong></td>
<td>They repaired the car.</td>
<td>The car was repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Simple</strong></td>
<td>They will repair the car.</td>
<td>The car will be repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Continuous</strong></td>
<td>They are repairing the car.</td>
<td>The car is being repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Continuous</strong></td>
<td>They were repairing the car.</td>
<td>The car was being repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>They have repaired the car.</td>
<td>The car has been repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>They had repaired the car.</td>
<td>The car had been repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>They will have repaired the car.</td>
<td>The car will have been repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Infinitive</strong></td>
<td>They will have to repair the car.</td>
<td>The car will have to be repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect Infinitive</strong></td>
<td>She ought to have repaired the car.</td>
<td>The car ought to have been repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gerund</strong></td>
<td>He likes people admiring his car.</td>
<td>He likes his car being admired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect Gerund</strong></td>
<td>Having repaired the car,…</td>
<td>The car, having been repaired,…</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Modals + be + Past Particle</strong></td>
<td>You must repair this car.</td>
<td>This car must be repaired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remember!**

No Passive with:

- Perfect Continuous
- Future Continuous
- Future Continuous in the Past
- Future Perfect Continuous in the Past

---

**Exercise 1.** Turn the sentences from Active into Passive. Do it to the following scheme:

**Student A:** Muslims celebrate Ramadan.  
**Student B:** Ramadan is celebrated by Muslims.
1. Muslims celebrate Ramadan.
2. An expert is restoring the antique car.
3. Steven Spielberg has directed a lot of successful films.
4. The judge has fined him $300.
5. A famous designer is going to redecorate the President’s house.
6. Van Gogh painted “Sunflowers”.
7. Astronauts are exploring space.
8. The company gave her the first rise in April.
9. Mr Layton carried out an interesting experiment.
10. His colleagues started to respect Tom.

**Exercise 2.** Look at the signs, notices, headlines, etc. and make the sentences using the full form of the Passive.

**Sample:** Rare birds found in remote countryside. – A rare bird has been found in the countryside.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rare bird found in remote countryside.</th>
<th>Queen welcomed to Australia yesterday.</th>
<th>New Jersey to be hit by bad weather tomorrow.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Five people injured in car accident.</td>
<td>Experiments being carried out on moon rocks.</td>
<td>Pop concert called off yesterday because of rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part-time secretary required.</td>
<td>Restaurant closed July 12th-28th.</td>
<td>Good salary offered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 3.** Change each of the following sentences from the Active into the Passive Voice.

| Someone will finish the project by tomorrow afternoon. | The project will be finished by tomorrow afternoon. |

1. Someone typed the report last week.
2. Someone has sent all the letters today.
3. Someone was writing the information during the meeting.
4. Someone will write down the client’s telephone number.
5. Someone is repairing the computer.

**Exercise 4.** Do the General Knowledge Quiz “Guess Who?” asking and answering questions as in the example.

Student A: Who discovered penicillin?

Student B: I think it was discovered by Alexander Fleming.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Action 1</th>
<th>Action 2</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin</td>
<td>Discover</td>
<td>Leonardo da Vinci</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The “Mona Lisa”</td>
<td>Paint</td>
<td>Lewis Carol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The radio</td>
<td>Invent</td>
<td>The Ancient Egyptians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The pyramids</td>
<td>Build</td>
<td>Walt Disney</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td>Discover</td>
<td>John Lennon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The telephone</td>
<td>Invent</td>
<td>Marconi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The song “Imagine”</td>
<td>Write</td>
<td>Alexander Fleming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mickey Mouse</td>
<td>Create</td>
<td>Alexander Graham Bell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Alice’s Adventures in Wonderland”</td>
<td>Write</td>
<td>Thomas Edison</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The electric bulb</td>
<td>Invent</td>
<td>Christopher Columbus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The revolver</td>
<td>Invent</td>
<td>Samuel Colt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Pacific Ocean</td>
<td>Discover</td>
<td>The Chinese</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The television</td>
<td>Invent</td>
<td>John L. Baird</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paper</td>
<td>Invent</td>
<td>Alfred Nobel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radioactivity</td>
<td>Discover</td>
<td>Becquerel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 5. Use “by” or “with”. Justify your choice.

1. The window was broken…a hammer.
2. He was knocked down…a car.
3. The lion was shot…a rifle.
4. That novel was written…D.H. Lawrence.
5. The garden was dug…a spade.
6. The city was attacked…the enemy.
7. The pudding was made…fruit and chocolate.
8. He was hit…a handbag.
9. The picture was painted…Jackson Pollack.
10. The house was built…wood and bricks.
11. The busy shopping street was crowded…people.
12. All through January the fields were covered…snow.
13. The island was inhabited…people of mainly Chinese origin.
14. The emergency exit was concealed…a red curtain.
15. The room was crammed…furniture of all descriptions.

Exercise 6. Turn the following into the Passive in two ways. Do it to the following scheme:

Student A: He was given a watch when he retired.

Student B: A watch was given to him when he retired.
1. They gave him a watch when he retired.
2. They have offered him a job.
3. She will send you a fax.
4. They are going to show me a new technique.
5. Someone gave her a book.
6. They give the students extra lessons.
7. They have shown her the plans for the house.
8. They should have sent you a receipt.
9. The secretary told me a lot of lies.
10. Mrs Lee teaches us French.
11. My friend owes me $5000.
12. My dad has lent me a car for the week.
13. The manager promised us a full explanation.
14. The referee gave Mary the first prize.
15. The controller will give you another ticket.

Exercise 7. Make the following active sentences passive. Remember that the post-
position or preposition should follow the verb immediately.
Student A:

Your complaint is being dealt with (by us).

1. We are dealing with your complaint.
2. They gave up the search after three hours.
3. No one brought up that question at the meeting.
4. Someone should look into the matter.
5. We had to put off our visit until later.
6. I was shocked to hear that someone had broken into your house.
7. Don’t speak until someone speaks to you.
8. You must account for every penny you spent.
9. Someone hasn’t stuck this lamp on very firmly.
10. No one can rely on him.
11. You should look after the children better.
12. They will deal with the matter as soon as possible.
13. They have done away with many dangerous diseases.
14. All the ministers will see him off at the airport.
15. Nobody objected to his proposal.
**Exercise 8.** Use passive constructions with “get” where possible. Comment on your choice.

Example: The plants (damage)…by the cold weather. – The plants **got damaged** by the cold weather. ("Get" is used here to emphasize an unfortunate action that happened unexpectedly.)

1. I never found the book we were looking for. It (lose)…when we were moving.
2. After the way he behaved last time he never (ask)…to their house again.
3. I phoned to explain what had happened but I (cut off)…before I could finish.
4. The book (tear)…when the children started fighting over who should read it first.
5. She was quite friendly at first, then she (promote)…and now she doesn’t care about us any more.
6. They were only married a year before they (divorce)…
7. There isn’t any cheese left; I’m afraid, it (eat)…in the morning.
8. Without a map we soon (loose)…
9. He was a well-known expert on animal diseases and his opinion (respect)…greatly.
10. He (kill)…in a plane crash.

It should be noted that there can be a passive meaning with an active form: e.g. The cow **milk**s well.
The fabric **wash**s badly.
The dress **wear**s well.

**Exercise 9.** Make the following active sentences passive where appropriate. Justify its use.

**Student A:**

- We serve hot meals till 10.30.
- He said that everything was OK. It’s impossible because the direct object is expressed by a that-clause.

**Student B:**

- Hot meals **are served** till 10.30.
- He said that everything **was** OK.
1. Nobody has used this room for ages.
2. We have to give the books back.
3. John enjoyed seeing his native town.
4. Martin is writing the company report this year.
5. They put fresh flowers in the hotel rooms every day.
7. Bad weather may delay your flight.
8. She washed herself and combed her hair.
9. The advertisement reads that the swimming-pool is free.
10. I hate people staring at me.

**Exercise 10.** Which sentences can be changed with the verb underlined in the Passive Voice?

**Example:** What happened to your team yesterday? = Cannot be changed.

1. Johnson scored the first goal in the second half.
2. The team refused to obey the referee’s decision.
3. Three competitors complained that Smith had taken a short cut.
4. The judges awarded the first prize to Denise Long.
5. She couldn’t run because her new shoes didn’t fit properly.
6. I really love the excitement involved in basketball.
7. The BBC broadcast the whole match live last season.
8. Both teams arrived late at the stadium.

**Exercise 11.** Change the words underlined. Use the passive voice, and make any other necessary changes.

Student A:

Begin: It is not really known…

Nobody really knows how people invented the game of basketball. People say that some ancient Greek vases show the game and people playing it. People generally think, however, that the game began in the United States quite recently. Somebody thought of the game in a YMCA club. Nobody can prove this of course, so perhaps it did begin earlier. Wherever people first played the game, basketball is now very popular, and many thousands of people play it, as people can play it outdoors and
indoors. Personally, I wish nobody had ever invented it, because people keep me awake when a big game is on TV. The noise is terrible.

**Exercise 12.** Read the information about a town, and complete the guidebook entry underneath it.

Student A:

[Image of a person]

St. Mary’s Church, which **was built** in 1472, stands in Wellington Square…

Railway station – closed (to be demolished, site to become sports centre). Dobson Gallery bought from Major Dobson (1923). Many gifts of paintings from private collectors. 4,000 visitors (double this expected this year). Local traders hold market on Tues. Town Hall (called by the Great Britain Guide a fine example of late Victorian architecture). St. Mary’s Church (1472), restored to original condition.

St. Mary’s Church, which [a] ____ , stands in Wellington Square, where a fruit and vegetable market [b] ______. The church [c] ______ to its original condition. On the south side of the square, the railway station (disused) [d] ______ next year, and a sports centre [e] ______. Opposite St. Mary’s is the Dobson Gallery, which [f] _____ by Major J. Dobson in 1923. It contains many paintings which [g] ______ to the gallery over the years. The gallery [h] ______ last year, and this number [i] ______ to rise to eight thousand this year. Next to the gallery is the Town Hall, which [j] ____ a perfect example of late-Victorian civic architecture.

**Exercise 13.** Complete the following dialogues that might be used in the conversation between workmates. Use the verbs to give, to fire and to type by making them correspond to the passive forms. Then make your own dialogues using different passive forms.

- Have you heard about John?
  - No, I haven’t. What happened?
  - He … a raise last week.
  - That’s great! That’s the second time he … a raise this year.
- Have you heard about Mary?
  - No, I haven’t. What happened?
  - She … last week.
  - What a shame! That’s the second time she … this year.
• I’m calling about my report. Has it … yet?
• Not yet. It’s … right now.
• When can I pick it up?
• It’ll be ready by 4 o’clock.

Exercise 14. Turn the following into the Passive using the constructions “It + Passive + that-clause” and “Subject (person) + Passive + to-infinitive”.

Student A:        Student B:

1. He is expected to win.
2. It is expected that he will win.
3. People expect him to win.
4. The newspapers expect that prices will fall in the spring.
5. Scientists have proved that smoking has some relation to lung cancer.
6. An official spokesman announced that 150 people had lost their lives in the disaster.
7. Journalists have reported that the President is ill.
8. Everyone knows that the statement was untrue.
9. Many people believe that the climate is changing.
10. Everyone knows that he has been in prison.
11. Many people say that the new prices are too high.
12. They claim that this diamond is the largest in the world.

Exercise 15. Answer the following questions using the passive form of the verbs in brackets.
Example: What **must be done** with a bad tooth? (pull out) – A bad tooth **must be pulled out**.

1. What has to be done with dirty crockery and cutlery at the end of a meal? (wash up)
2. What should happen if mistakes appear in a student’s work? (point out)
3. What might happen if you crossed a busy road without looking? (knock down)
4. What would happen to a lighted candle if there were a sudden gust of wind? (blow out)
5. What may happen to a man who gas committed his first offence? (let off)
6. What happens to traffic in a traffic jam? (hold up)
7. What happens to workers if they become redundant? (lay down)
8. What must be done if a plan or an idea proves unworkable? (give up)
9. A notice has disappeared from a noticeboard. What must have happened? (take away)
10. I dropped a $1 note in the street, and can’t find it. What could have happened to it? (pick up)

**TEST**

**TASK I.** Open the brackets using the correct passive tense form.

1. He (**to elect**) as Secretary of the Club.
2. John (**to ask**) to bring his notebook to the party.
3. The library (**to close**) before nine o’clock.
4. This newspaper (**to print**) every day for twenty years.
5. Tom and Bill (**not to invite**) to the party yet.
6. This program (**not always to broadcast**) at eight o’clock.
7. You (**not to introduce**) to Mr Brown yet.
8. Why the gates of the park (**to close**) so early?
9. This plan (**to recommend**) by the Committee, hasn’t it?
10. Why Bill and Mary (**not to invite**) to Ann’s party?

**TASK II.** Turn from Active into Passive.

1. Somebody is pressing Mary’s dress.
2. They are dry-cleaning his suit.
3. They polish his car every month.
4. Someone will mend the fence next weekend.
5. They’ll broadcast this program again.
6. People are going to hold the meeting next Saturday.
7. Friends have asked Tom to sing.
8. They can mend this radio.
9. People chop down a lot of trees every year.
10. Someone has stolen Mike’s bicycle.

**TASK III.** Translate into English.
1. Маленькому ребенку дают сок каждый день.
2. Меня всегда хвала́т за мою работу.
3. Его сбила машина на Хай-стрит прошлой ночью.
4. Эту программу не передавали на прошлой недели, не так ли?
5. Эта посылка будет доставлена через три дня.
6. Сочинение будет написано ко вторнику.
7. Строители утверждают, что дом будет построен в начале следующего года.
8. Москва была основана в 1147 году.
Unit 9. The Sequence of Tenses.

В английском языке время глагола в придаточном предложении зависит от времени, в котором употреблен глагол в главном предложении. Употребление времен в придаточных предложениях, главным образом дополнительных, подчиняется следующим правилам согласования времен:

I. Если глагол в главном предложении имеет форму настоящего или будущего времени, то в придаточном предложении может употребляться любое время, которое требуется по смыслу.

Например:
I am disappointed that you have failed in Maths.
In some days I will know for sure where we will spend our summer vacations.
They have informed us that the police coped extremely well.

II. Если глагол в главном предложении стоит в одном из прошедших времен, то и глагол в придаточном предложении также должен стоять в одном из прошедших времен (включая Future-in-the-Past).

Примечание: Если в предложении несколько придаточных, правила согласования времен применяются к каждому из них.

Например:
He exclaimed he was unhappy you were in quarrel with him.
She admitted that she was aware what kind of problem would arise.

При переносе ситуации в план прошедшего времени обратите внимание на так называемый сдвиг времен и изменения формы указательных местоимений, наречий и других слов.
Table 1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know that she usually cleans the flat herself.</td>
<td>I knew that she usually cleaned the flat herself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Continuous</td>
<td>Past Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I know that she is cleaning the flat now.</td>
<td>I know that she was cleaning the flat then.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I know that she has cleaned the flat.</td>
<td>I knew that she had cleaned the flat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Simple</td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I know that she cleaned the flat last week.</td>
<td>I knew that she had cleaned the flat the previous week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Simple</td>
<td>Future Simple-in-the-Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I know that she will clean the flat next week.</td>
<td>I know that she would clean the flat the next week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2:

today, tonight here now this, these tonight yesterday the day before yesterday 2 years ago last night, week, month, etc. tomorrow the day after tomorrow next week/year, etc. that day, that night there then that, those that night the day before/the previous day 2 days before yesterday 2 years before the night, week, etc., before/the previous night, week the following day /the next day in two days' time the following week /the next week/year, etc.

The action in the subordinate clause may be
- simultaneous (одновременным)
- prior (предшествующим)
- posterior (последующим)

to the action in the principle clause.
1. Если действие в придаточном предложении происходит одновременно с действием в главном предложении (simultaneous actions), в придаточном предложении употребляются Past Simple либо Past Continuous.

Например:
I knew that he played tennis every day. Я знал, что он ежедневно играет в теннис.
I knew that he was playing tennis and I didn’t want to disturb him. Я знал, что он играет в теннис, и мне не хотелось его беспокоить.

Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Russian:

Student A:                                                                                  Student B:

1. She could not imagine what he was doing there alone. Я не могла представить, что он один там делал.
2. I forgot what he looked like. Я забыла, как он выглядел.
3. I did not know whether the doctor was experienced enough. Я не знал, достаточно ли опыта у доктора.
4. What surprised me was that Pat was so much at home there. Меня удивило, что Пат так много проводил время там.
5. He asked me what work I was doing. Он спросил у меня, что я делаю.
6. I was surprised you knew my name. Я был удивлен, что вы знаете моё имя.
7. He told his father that he made ten dollars a week. Он рассказал отцу, что у него получается десять долларов в неделю.
8. She informed everyone who phoned her that she was unwell and did not leave home. Она информировала всех, кто звонил ей, что у неё недомогание и она не покидала дом.
9. He admitted that he felt lonely in London. Он признал, что он чувствовал себя одиноко в Лондоне.
10. She warned me that it was dangerous to walk in the park alone. Она предупредила меня, что это опасно дойти одиноким по парку.

Exercise 2. Change the verb in the principal clause into a past tense and make the necessary changes in the subordinate clause.

Student A:                                              Student B:

She always tells people that she is good at languages. Она всегда говорит, что она хорошо разбирается в языках.

She told people that she was good at languages. Она сказала, что она хорошо разбирается в языках.
1. Everybody knows that Susan is strict about keeping things tidy.
2. I forget that she is always letting people down.
3. What he is saying is not true.
4. Mary complains that she is bored with the same old routine day after day.
5. He knows that his grandparents always go to church on Sundays.
6. He wants us to see that he is not hostile.
7. We know that the bridge is unsafe.
8. She can’t understand why they are trying to talk her into taking a dance course.
9. My sister agrees that she needs a shoulder to cry on.
10. I can tell from her face that she is lying.
11. We know that the company is reorganizing its departments.

**Exercise 3.** Open the brackets using the correct tense form.

1. My daughter wanted to see the new film. She found out that many good actors (star) in it.
2. She complained that Jack always (get) on her nerves.
3. We were not sure that Paul would find Mary. We were afraid he (not/know) her address.
4. I didn’t introduce Jack to Helen. I was sure they (know) each other, but it appeared they didn’t.
5. It was a pity he no longer (care) in the least about Pat.
6. He proved to everyone’s satisfaction that the drug (be) effective and harmless.
7. I knew she usually (get) in such a fuss before people (come) to dinner.
8. The Johnsons were away. We learnt that they (travel) about Canada.
9. She stayed in the whole evening. We were sure she (expect) guests.
10. I met Judy in the department store the other day. She explained that she (look) for a nice T-shirt for herself.
11. She mentioned to her colleagues that she (think) of retiring.

**Exercise 4.** Complete the following sentences using the words prompted.

**E.g.** I didn’t want to phone Mary at that late hour. I knew she (go to bed early).

Student A:
e.g. The Petrovs were away. We learned that they (travel in the Caucasus).

Student B:

I gave that stamp to Peter. He said he (collect stamps).
1. I saw Andrew at the bus-stop some minutes ago. He said he (wait for Jane).
2. When I phoned Victor the other day he was out. His sister told me he (play tennis in the park).
3. We made up our minds to spend the holidays in the mountains. We thought it (be a great idea).
4. I met Judy in the department store. She said she (look for a winter coat).
5. We sent a ticket to Mr. Smith. We knew he (be keen on ballet).
6. My brother wanted to see that film. He said that many good actors (star in it).
7. We were not sure Paul would find Mary. We were afraid he (not, know her address).
8. When I came home yesterday my brother was busy. I saw that he (pack his things).
9. I didn't introduce Jack to Helen. I was sure they (know each other) but it appeared they didn't.

2. Если действие в придаточном предложении предшествует действию в главном предложении (prior action), в придаточном предложении употребляется Past Perfect или Past Perfect Continuous.

Например:
I knew (that) Bill had not had time to read my letter. Я знал, что Билл ещё не успел прочесть моё письмо.
We knew (that) they had been saving money since October. Мы знали, что они экономили деньги с прошлого года.

Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences into Russian:

Student A: I thought that you had passed the exam.

Student B: Я думал, что ты сдал экзамен.
1. I looked at my watch and saw that we had been discussing the production plan for 3 hours.
2. It was not known where he had spent his early childhood.
3. When I saw Alec he boasted that he'd spent a month in the south.
4. When I met Mary I understood that she had been crying.
5. When I called on my friend the other day he said that he had been working at his report for a month.
6. She seemed to have forgotten what had happened a few minutes before.
7. The question was why he had sold the house.

**Exercise 2.** Make the actions in the following object clauses prior to those of the principal clauses.

1. What she could not understand was why he (to tell) them such a pack of lies.
2. Her mother had once confided to her that she (to want) to be an actress.
3. It was probably true that he (to be) quite fond of his late brother.
4. I wondered what she (to do) there so late at night.
5. When I came to the station I saw my cousin. I understood that she (miss) the 8 o'clock train.
6. Everybody praised the film. Mary was sorry she (not/see) it.
7. It was raining hard. Mrs. Parker regretted she (not/take) an umbrella.
8. My friend called on me yesterday. He boasted he (get) two tickets for the match.
9. Harry didn't come to the party. We thought he (not/receive) our invitation.
10. We wanted to know where she (be) all that time.
11. I found out that a professional singer (be engaged) for the concert some days before.

**Exercise 3.** Answer the following questions expressing priority in the subordinate clauses.

**e.g.** Loretta passed all her exams in June, didn't she? (be glad; well).

**Student A:**

Loretta passed all her exams in June, didn't she?

**Student B:**

Yes, she did. She was glad that she had passed them all well.
1. Jane found her cell-phone, didn't she? (explain; at her friend's)
2. Alice met John at a disco, didn't she? (boast; two days ago)
3. Linda danced a lot at the party, didn't she? (be happy; with Tom)
4. Did Ann go to the theatre on Sunday? (find out; with her boy-friend)
5. Did the boss force him into resigning? (complain; practically)
6. What did he do with his digital watch? (explain; sell; the day before yesterday)
7. Why did Grace join a drama club? (say; want to learn acting)
8. Why did she make so many mistakes in the test? (learn; not/work hard)
9. Why didn't she look very happy after her trip to Rome? (complain; not/see all the sights)
10. Why is she hoovering the room again? (explain; the dog; leave hairs all over)

**Exercise 4.** Complete the following sentences using the words prompted.

*e.g.* I didn't think Mike would come with us. I knew he (see that performance before).

**Student A:**

I didn't think Mike would come with us. I knew he had seen that performance before.

**e.g.** Ann was angry with Andrew. She said she (wait for half an hour).

**Student B:**

Ann was angry with Andrew. She said she had been waiting for half an hour.

1. When I came to the station I saw my cousin. I understood that he (miss the 8 o'clock train).
2. Alice was busy yesterday. She said she (type all day long).
3. Everybody praised the film. Mary was sorry she (not, see it).
4. It was raining hard. Mrs. Parker regretted that she (not, take an umbrella).
5. Jack was happy that he had got a ticket. He said he (stand in a queue for two hours).
6. I was sorry that Peter had failed his exam. I knew that he (prepare for it for a long time).
7. My brother called on me yesterday. He said he (buy tickets for the match).
8. Mother looked very tired when I returned home this afternoon. She said she (clean the flat).
9. I was surprised that Betsy didn't know the news. I was sure her husband (tell her everything).
10. Harry didn't come to the party. We thought he (not, receive our invitation).

3. Если действие в придаточном предложении относится к будущему времени, а действие главного предложения - к прошедшему, в придаточном предложении употребляется т.н. Future - in-the- Past (posterior action).

Например:
I knew (that) Bill would come to see me after 10 P.M. Я знал, что Билл придёт ко мне после 10 часов вечера.

I was sure (that) the children would still be watching TV when I came. Я был уверен, что дети все еще будут смотреть телевизор, когда я приду.

Exercise 1. Transform the following sentences referring them to the past:

Student A: Mother hopes that her junior son will be back tomorrow.

Student B: It is settled that she will take part in the project.

1. Mother hopes that her junior son will be back tomorrow.
2. We are sure that it will be better to call at the Department store on our way home.
3. No one in the company can predict in what way the problem will be settled.
4. The editor insists that the article will be published immediately.
5. I have always believed that one day I will see him again.
6. There is an announcement in the local newspaper that the prices on consumer goods will rise next year.
7. The weather forecast says that it will pour with rain in two days’ time.
8. He predicts that he will discover the tiny particle during his next experiment.
9. He insists that the reforms will save the system, not destroy it.

Exercise 2. Open the brackets using the right adverbials.

1. A couple of weeks ago my son asked me to take him to the circus. I promised that we would go there (next week, the next week).
2. I ran into Mike last Sunday in a fast-food restaurant. He suggested that we should go to Paris (tomorrow, the next day).
3. The students understand they won’t be allowed to leave until (the next day, tomorrow).
4. John promised me some days before that he would call on my parents (next, the following) Sunday and tell them I was O.K.
5. They've announced that the exam on Linguistics will be put off till the end of (next, the next) term.
6. There was very strong hope that the wounded man would survive by (next, the next) morning.
7. This summer was very wet. (Next, the next) summer will even be wetter.
8. I intended to visit Helen in hospital last Friday, but her husband phoned me on Thursday and said that the doctors would discharge her from hospital (the day after tomorrow, in two days' time).
9. Last year he promised his wife that they would definitely spend (next, the next) summer at the seaside.
10. We arrived in Turin on Monday and decided that (next, the following) day we would leave for Rome.
11. I hope that we will leave for the South (next week, the next week).

Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using the words prompted.

e.g. I was out when my friend dropped in. I didn't think he (come so early).
I was out when my friend dropped in. I didn't think he would come so early.

1. On Friday I saw Lucy. I learned she (go abroad soon).
2. Nick didn't want to stay at his relatives'. He decided that he (put up at a hotel)
3. I felt worried. I was afraid Jane (be late).
4. There were a lot of good actors in the cast. I thought that the film (be interesting)
5. John came by train. I was sure he (fly).
6. The task was too difficult for me. My friend promised he (help me).
7. Paul had already seen the play. He was sure we (enjoy it).

Помните, что, если глагол в главном предложении стоит в прошедшем времени, модальные глаголы могут оставаться без изменений или изменить форму в соответствии с таблицей:
**Exercise 1.** Transform the following sentences referring them to the past.

Student A:                           Student B:

1. She boasts that she can read when she was 3.
2. The coach says that I must train very hard to develop muscles like that.
3. She is sure that good cooking can disguise the quality of the ingredients.

1. She complains she must pay all the money back at a time.
2. He thinks that as far as we have bought all the books we needn't go to the library.
3. The notice says that people mustn't smoke inside the theatre.
4. My friend thinks I should get my car repaired.
5. We can't believe that it may be so important, but it is.
6. It is clear that Helen needn't worry as Ken will not be late.
7. They explain that I should see the doctor first.
В придаточных предложениях определительных, сравнительных, причины и других.

**Например:**

*My boss informed me about the work he is planning.*

*He was not able to pass his exams because he does not work hard.*

*It was not so stuffy yesterday as it is now.*

Когда в придаточном предложении дополнительном речь идет об общеизвестных истинах, фактах, явлениях:

**Например:**

*The teacher said that the ice melts when the temperature rises above 0°C.*

*He explained to us very clearly how computers work.*

В контексте настоящего времени (т.е. в беседе), когда в дополнительном придаточном сообщается фактическое, а не относительное время событий:

**Например:**

– *I've just phoned Steve.*
– *What did he say?*
– *He said there it was freezing hard in Paris yesterday.*

Если информация, содержащаяся в придаточном предложении все еще соответствует действительности:

**Например:**

*Agatha wrote to me saying that her father owns a factory.*

Когда действия в придаточном предложении относятся к определенному моменту в прошлом, употребляется the Past Simple:

**Например:**

*I knew that his son graduated from the University in 1988.*

**Exercise 1.** Open the brackets, using proper tense forms. Explain why the rules of the Sequence of Tenses may not be observed in the following sentences:
1. Stella remarked that she (return) from the office a minute ago.
2. Paul was sure he (meet) Sarah in Moscow in July 2006, but he didn’t remember the exact date.
3. Nobody could imagine that the Earth (rotate) round the Sun before Galileo.
4. My brother was much thinner in his childhood than he (be) now.
5. What did Barbara complain just now about? — She complained that her tooth still (ache) .
6. The advertisement read that the swimming-pool (be) free, but when we got there, we found we had to pay.
7. He rejected the job of an interpreter as he (not to speak) foreign languages well enough.
8. We discussed our holiday plans because we (have) a two-week leave in a month.
9. I couldn’t even think that the woman who (live) nextdoor was so friendly.
10. I was going to get a cup of coffee, but Reter just explained that the machine (be) out of order. It's going to be fixed tomorrow.
11. They announced on the radio that the Queen (come) here next month. Isn't that exciting?
12. When the Chairman spoke to reporters yesterday, he admitted that the company (be) now in a much better financial position.
13. I didn’t know that the man who normally (work) here was ill.

**TEST**

**TASK I.** Pick out the correct variant.

1. Steve promised (that)
   a) he comes soon;
   b) he had not come;
   c) he would come soon.
3. Andrew explained (that)
   a) he is having a vacation soon;
   b) he had had a vacation two weeks before;
   c) he will have a vacation the following week.
4. Kevin didn't know (that);
   a) he must report on the problem tomorrow;
   b) he would have to report on the problem the following day
   c) he has report on the problem long ago.
5. Tom explained (that)
   a) he can't attend the lecture last Monday;
   b) he couldn't attend the lecture the previous Monday;
   c) he won’t attend the lecture on Monday.
6. The farmer hoped (that)
a) the weather will be better next summer;
b) the weather would be better the following summer;
c) the weather had been better next summer.
7. All the students knew (that)
a) a molecule of water would have two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen;
b) a molecule of water has two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen;
c) a molecule of water had had two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen.

**TASK II.** Use the proper tense forms:

Once an Englishman went to the seaside for his holidays. He asked his housekeeper to post him all the letters that she (receive) during his absence. She promised him to do that. The Englishman rested very well. A month passed but he (not to receive) any letters. He thought that it (be) strange and he (ring) up his housekeeper and asked her why she (not to post) his letters. The housekeeper explained that he (forget) to leave her the key to the letter-box. The Englishman promised that he (send) her the key. Some days later he put the key into an envelope, wrote down his address on it and posted the letter. Another month was passing. But still he didn't receive any letters. Then at the end of the month he returned home. He spoke angrily with his housekeeper. But the poor man was not to blame because the key which his master (post) was in the locked letter-box too.

**TASK III.** Translate into English:

1. Я заметил, что она смотрит на меня.
2. Учительница сказала, что мы должны повторить все правила.
3. Я знаю, что вам нечего бояться.
4. Я надеялся, что кто-то нашел мои ключи и передаст их мне.
5. Он обещал, что все будет сделано.
6. Я знал, что он пожалеет об этом.
7. Я дам вам ответ, когда я поговорю с отцом.
8. Он обещал, что скажет вам, что я уже вернулся и хочу видеть вас.
9. Она боялась, что вы скажете, что не можете помочь ей.
10. Я надеялся, что я успею на последний поезд, но я опоздал.
11. Вчера по дороге домой я зашел к Николаю. Он сказал, что только что получил телеграмму от матери и через час пойдет на вокзал встречать ее.
12. Когда я зашла к моей подруге, ее мать сказала, что ее нет дома: она сдает экзамен, но скоро вернется.
**TASK IV.** Read and reproduce the following texts:

The Prescription on the Door.

A man fell ill, and the doctor was sent for. The doctor came; and when he had found out what the matter was, he asked for a pen, ink and paper, so that he might write a prescription. But there were no such things in the house; so the man’s wife went out to try to borrow them from somebody. She was a long time gone, and the doctor grew tired of waiting. He took a piece of coal, wrote the prescription with it on the door and went away. The thing was that nobody in the house could read or write Latin. So they took the door off its hinges, and carried it to the chemist’s shop, and got the medicine.

The Law of Gravity.

One day while Newton was sitting in the garden under an apple tree he saw an apple fall to the ground. Of course the fall of an apple is a very common thing. A great many people before Newton had seen an apple fall to the ground, but they had never taken the trouble to investigate such an everyday occurrence. Newton was the first man to ask: “Why does an apple fall to the ground?”

He thought the matter over for a long time. It took him many years to solve the problem. At last he found out that the earth pulls all the things towards its centre, and that was the reason why the apple had fallen towards the earth and not away from it. Newton also found out that the sun attracts the earth and all the planets, and that each planet attracts other planets, just in the same way as the earth attracts apples.

***

Once Mark Twain and a friend of his were going abroad together. It happened that an American editor, who knew them both, was going abroad on the same ship. When the ship was a few days out, the editor invited some people to his cabin for drinks. Mark Twain and his friend were the first to be invited. The editor knew that they were both very witty, so he told them, before the party, that he hoped they would each make a speech before the guests left the cabin.

When the time for speeches came, Mark Twain was the first to speak. He spoke for about a quarter of an hour and everybody laughed a lot. Then the editor asked Twain’s friend to make a speech. He stood up and said, “Ladies and Gentlemen, before this party we prepared our speeches together and we decided, just for fun, that Mark Twain would say what I had prepared and I was to say what he had. Well, you’ve just heard my speech and I thank you for laughing so much. However, I’m afraid I’ve quite forgotten what he was to say.”

Then Twain’s friend sat down and this made everybody laugh again.
Unit 11. Conditionals

A. Zero Conditional
B. First Conditional
C. Second Conditional
D. Third Conditional
E. Mixed Conditionals

A. Zero Conditional

Условные предложения нулевого типа (Zero Conditional) выражают действия, относящиеся к настоящему времени. Этот тип предложений описывает то, что происходит всегда. Придаточное предложение начинается с if или when.

Form:
if + Present Simple, Present Simple

Examples:
- If I go to a friend's house for dinner, I usually take a bottle of wine or some flowers.
- When I have a day off from work, I often go to the beach.
- If the weather is nice, she walks to work.
- Jerry helps me with my homework when he has time.
- I read if there is nothing on TV.
- A: What do you do when it rains?  
  B: I stay at home.
- A: Where do you stay if you go to Sydney?  
  B: I stay with my friends near the harbor.

Союзы "if" и "when" используются в условных предложениях нулевого типа. Использование "if" говорит о том, что действие, выраженное в придаточном предложении, происходит не часто. Использование "when" означает, что действие происходит регулярно.
NB!!! *If / When*

Examples:
- **When** I have a day off from work, I usually go to the beach. (I *regularly* have days off from work)
- **If** I have a day off from work, I usually go to the beach. (I *rarely* have days off from work)

**Exercise 1:** Put in *If* or *When* in the Zero Conditional sentences.

1. _______I am late to work, my boss gets very angry. That is why I am always on time.
2. _______I leave work, I usually go to the fitness center to work out.
3. _______he eats, he tries to choose healthy foods.
4. His car is very reliable, and he rarely has any trouble with it. But he has had a couple of difficulties in the past. _______his car breaks down or he has any problems, he calls the auto club.
5. His car is terrible! It always breaks down. _______his car breaks down or he has any problems, he calls the auto club.
6. Mary gets a six-week paid vacation a year. She loves to travel. _______she goes on vacation, she always goes somewhere exotic.
7. Diane works harder than anyone I know. I don't think she has taken a day off in three years. But she does really love to travel. _______she goes on vacation, she always goes somewhere exotic.
8. He loves going to the movies. _______he goes to the movies, he always gets a large popcorn with tons of butter.
9. She hates TV. She thinks television is a waste of time. _______she watches any television at all, it is usually a documentary or a news program.
10. My friend always keeps in touch by mail. _______I get a letter, I usually write back immediately.

**Exercise 2:** Match the items in column A with those in column B in order to make Zero Conditional sentences.
A
1. If you water your plants regularly, a) the tea tastes sweeter.
2. If you read newspapers, b) I get red spots on my skin.
3. If the sun shines, c) the game starts.
4. If you lie in the sun for a long time, d) you learn a lot.
5. If you add sugar to a cup of tea, e) she always phones me every evening.
6. When you do morning exercises every day, f) your skin turns red.
7. If you put a nail in a bowl of water, g) they die very quickly.
8. If you don’t look after tomato plants, h) snow melts.
9. When she travels abroad on business, i) nylon melts.
10. If I eat dairy products, j) the plants grow.
11. If you use a very hot iron on nylon, k) the nail sinks.
12. When you press this key, l) you feel healthy.

B. First Conditional (Real)

Условные предложения первого типа (First Conditional (Real) выражают вполне реальные, осуществимые предположения и соответствуют в русском языке условным предложениям с глаголом в изъявительном наклонении. Этот тип предложений иногда называется реальным условным. Оно описывает то, что произойдет в реальной ситуации; действие относится к будущему времени.

Form:
if + Simple Present, will+bare infinitive

Examples:
• If I find her address, I will send her an invitation.
• I will send her an invitation if I find her address.
• If I don’t see him this afternoon, I will phone him in the evening.
• If John has the money, he will buy a Ferrari.

Exercise 1: Complete the First Conditional Sentences.

1. If you (eat) an ice-cream, I (have) a hot chocolate.
2. If she (need) a computer, her brother (give) her his computer.
3. If we (not have) time this afternoon, we (meet) tomorrow.
4. He (talk) to her if you (not want) to do it.
5. You (not win) the game if you (not know) the rules.
6. If you (wash) the dishes, I (cook) dinner tonight.
7. If my dad (have) time next week, we (paint) my room.
8. You (learn) a lot about American history if you (visit) the exhibition.
9. If the weather (not be) too bad tomorrow, we (play) golf.
10. We (not get) there on time if we (not catch) the bus.

**Exercise 2:** Match the items in column A with those in column B in order to make First Conditional Sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. If you send her your letter now,</td>
<td>a) if she has time in the afternoon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If I do this test,</td>
<td>b) if you watch this scary film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If I find your ring,</td>
<td>c) if she doesn’t close the window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Peggy will go shopping</td>
<td>d) she will receive it tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Simon will go to London next week</td>
<td>e) she will leave him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. If her boyfriend doesn’t phone today,</td>
<td>f) if he gets a cheap flight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. If they don’t study harder,</td>
<td>g) they won’t pass their exams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. If it rains tomorrow,</td>
<td>h) I won’t have to water the plants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. You will not be able to sleep</td>
<td>i) I will improve my English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Susan will catch a severe cold</td>
<td>j) I will give it back to you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 3:** Complete the First Conditional Sentences by putting the verbs into the correct form.

Some friends are planning a party. Everybody wants to the party, but nobody's really keen on preparing and organising the party. So everybody comes up with a few conditions, just to make sure that the others will also do something.

1. If Caroline and Sue (prepare) the salad, Phil (decorate) the house.
2. If Sue (cut) the onions for the salad, Caroline (peel) the mushrooms.
3. Jane (hover) the sitting room if Aaron and Tim (move) the furniture.
4. If Bob (tidy up) the kitchen, Anita (clean) the toilet.
5. Elaine (buy) the drinks if somebody (help) her carry the bottles.
6. If Alan and Rebecca (organise) the food, Mary and Conor (make) the sandwiches.
7. If Bob (look after) the barbecue, Sue (let) the guests in.
8. Frank (play) the DJ if the others (bring) along their CDs.
9. Alan (mix) the drinks if Jane (give) him some of her cocktail recipes.
10. If they all (do) their best, the party (be) great.

**Exercise 4:** Answer the following questions using the words suggested.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Student A:</th>
<th>Student B:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What will you do if you haven’t got a book at home?</td>
<td>If I haven’t got a book at home, I shall barrow one from a library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. What shall we do if the weather is fine? (go skating)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. What will the boy do if you take away his toys? (cry)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Where will you take your watch if it stops? (to a watchmaker)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. What will happen if you lose your gloves? (buy a new pair)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. What will you do if you feel hungry? (go to the canteen)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. What will you do if you have a high temperature? (send for a doctor)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. What will you do if you are late? (take a taxi)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. What will you do if it rains? (take an umbrella)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. What will you do if you cough? (take some tablets)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. What will you do if it is very cold? (stay at home)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 5:** Choose the right variant:

1. If I lose my job now, I ... 
   a) start a business of my own.
   b) will take a long holiday and apply for a new job later.

2. If he calls me 'lazy' again, I ...
a) won’t ever help him again if he's in trouble.
b) go and tell his parents.

3. Philippa won't ever speak to me again if I …
a) let her down now.
b) will let her down now.

4. If the demand increases, prices …
a) rise.
b) will rise.

5. Our dog Gelert will start licking you if you …
a) pat him on the back.
b) will give it a cuddle.

6. Don't be offended. If Jane is annoyed, she …
a) will start yelling at people.
b) starts yelling at people.

7. If Jeremy doesn't answer the phone this time, I …
a) won't call again.
b) don't call again.

C. Second Conditional (Unreal)

Условные предложения второго типа (нереальные) (Second Conditional (Unreal) выражают невероятные или маловероятные предположения. Действие относится к настоящему или будущему времени.

Examples:
- If I owned a car, I would drive to work. But I don't own a car.
- A: What would you do if you won the lottery?
  B: I would buy a house.

Form:
If + Past Simple, would + bare infinitive
**EXCEPTION:** If I were ... Глагол to be в условиях предложениях второго типа (the Second Unreal Conditional) принимает форму were независимо от лица и числа.

Examples:
- If he were French, he would live in Paris.
- If she were rich, she would buy a yacht.
- I would play basketball if I were taller.
- I would buy that computer if it were cheaper.

**Exercise 1:** Say what you would do in my place.

![Image of a conversation]

**Prompts:** to work harder, to consult a lawyer, to take a holiday, to buy a blue dress, to follow my doctor’s advice, to start my training, to visit this museum, to go to London, to wash the windows today, to read this book, to clean the shoes, to take an umbrella.

**Exercise 2:** Advise your friend not to do it.

![Image of a conversation]

**Prompts:** to keep a snake as a pet, to go to the forest, to watch TV for six hours a day, to be rude to my brother, to smoke very strong cigarettes, to make a noise, to buy a lot of clothes, to waste much money, to eat so much ice-cream, to drink coffee before going to bed.

**Exercise 3:**

a) Complete the Second Conditional Sentences.

![Image of a conversation]
Janine is a daydreamer. She imagines what would happen if she won the lottery.
1. If I played the lottery, I (have) a chance to hit the jackpot.
2. If I hit the jackpot, I (be) rich.
3. If I were rich, my life (change) completely.
4. I would buy a lonely island, if I (find) a nice one.
5. If I owned a lonely island, I (build) a huge house by the beach.
6. I would invite all my friends if I (have) a house by the beach.
7. I would pick my friends up in my yacht if they (want) to spend their holidays on my island.
8. We would have great parties if my friends (come) to my island.
9. If we liked to go shopping in a big city, we (charter) a helicopter.
10. But if my friends' holidays were over, I (feel) very lonely on my lonely island.

b) Write a similar “if-chain” yourself. Start with “If I had a lot of money…”

Exercise 4: Match the items in column A with those in column B in order to make the Second Conditional Sentences.

A                                                                           B
1. If we had a yacht,                                             a) if she were mad at you.
2. If he had more time,                                         b) he would be very angry.
3. If they told their father the truth,                      c) if we knew how.
4. She would spend a year in England                         d) you would speak English better.
5. If I lived on a lonely island,                              e) we would sail the seven seas.
6. We would help you                                           f) if he had a lot of money.
7. My brother would buy a sports car                       g) if it were easier to get a visa.
8. If I felt better,                                                    h) I would run around naked all day.
9. If you worked harder,                                        i) he would learn karate.
10. She would not talk to you                                    j) I would go to the cinema with
**Exercise 5:** Reword the sentences combining them into the Second Conditional sentences.

1. Mary doesn’t like football. She doesn’t go to football matches.
2. I like coffee. I have it for breakfast every day.
3. This divan-bed is soft. I sleep on it.
4. We have no vegetables at home. We can’t prepare any salad.
5. The bread is not fresh. I shan’t buy any.
6. John knows three foreign languages. He is a good interpreter.
7. Ann is busy today. She won’t go to the cinema.
8. He is ill. He won’t go to school.
9. Mike is not busy today. He will go to the concert.
10. It is hot today. We shall go for a swim.
11. Mr. Black lives quite near his office. It takes him only 5 minutes to get there.
12. My sister leaves home at 7. She doesn’t miss her train.

**Exercise 6:** Answer the following questions using the words suggested.

**Student A:**
1. What would you do if you won a million pounds? (buy a house)
2. If you were in London now, what would you want to see?
3. What would you do if you were in my place? (go to the cinema)
4. What would you do if it were summer now? (go to the Crimea)
5. What would you do if you have a toothache? (go to the dentist)
6. What would you do if you fell in? (send for a doctor)
7. What would you do if it were winter now? (ski in the park)
8. If you could go to any place in the world for a holiday, where would you go and

**Student B:**
1. If I were in London now, I would go to the zoo, because I love animals very much.

If I were a doctor, I should help you.
what do you think you would see?
9. What place for a holiday would you choose if you were interested in meeting new people? (mountain climbing, swimming and sun-bathing, visiting museums and art galleries, speaking English).

Exercise 7: Match the items in column A with those in column B in order to make the First and Second Conditional Sentences.

**A**
1. If you play the music too loud,
2. If the North Pole melted,
3. If we don’t have enough ice-cream,
4. If I found someone’s wallet,
5. If a burglar broke into this house,
6. If my train isn’t late,
7. If I were famous,
8. If my father lends me the money,
9. If you took more exercise,
10. If you tell me what you want,

**B**
 a) the alarm would go off.
b) I’ll buy a new bike.
c) I’ll be in Paris at 6.00.
d) I will do everything for you..
e) you would feel better.
f) the water would flood many cities.
g) I’ll buy it for you.
h) you’ll wake up the neighbours.
i) I would be recognised by everybody.
j) I’d take it to the police.

Exercise 8: Memorize the following proverbs and use them in short situations of your own.

1. If ifs and ans were pots and pans. – Если бы да кабы во рту росли грибы.
2. If there were no clouds, we should not enjoy the sun. – Если бы не было облаков, то мы не ценили бы солнце.
3. If it were not for hope, the heart would break. – Сердце надеждой живёт.

Exercise 9: Complete the Conditional Sentences. Decide whether to use the First or Second Conditionals.

1. If you do your homework, we (go) to the cinema in the evening.
2. If we (order) the book now, we will have it tomorrow.
3. If I (have) more money, I would buy a bigger car.
4. If I met my favourite movie star, I (ask) him for an autograph.
5. I will call you if I (need) your help next Sunday.
6. I (go) swimming if the weather were better today.
7. If he doesn't have time tomorrow, we (meet) the day after.
8. If I (be) you, I wouldn't know what to do now.
9. If we (not order) the tickets soon, there won't be any tickets left.
10. If I had a car, I (drive) my friend to the University every day.
11. If we (live) on another planet, we would see the Earth in the sky.
12. If we were birds, we (be able) to fly.

Exercise 10: Translation:
1. Я бы написал ему письмо, если бы знал его адрес.
2. Что ты будешь делать, если у тебя будет свободное время?
3. На твоём месте я бы знал, что делать.
4. Если завтра не будет идти дождь, мы будем играть в футбол.
5. Если ты будешь работать больше, ты сдашь экзамен.
6. Если я не буду слушать учителя, я ничего не пойму.
7. Ты купишь эти туфли, если они подойдут тебе?

D. Third Conditional (Unreal)

Условные предложения третьего типа (нереальные) (Third Conditional (Unreal)) выражают невероятные предположения, действия которых относится к прошедшему времени.

Form:
if + past perfect, would have + past participle

Examples:
- If I had known you were coming, I would have met you at the station last Sunday.
- If you had reminded me, I would not have forgotten to do it.

Exercise 1: Complete the Third Conditional Sentences by putting the verbs into the correct form.

If you had asked me, I would have helped you yesterday.
1. If you had studied for the test, you (pass) it.
2. If you (ask) me, I would have helped you yesterday.
3. If we had gone to the cinema last Sunday, we (see) my friend Jacob.
4. If you (speak) English, she would have understood you.
5. If you (phone) me yesterday, I would have told you the news.
6. I (write) you a postcard when I was in London if I had had your address.
7. If I had not broken my leg, I (take part) in the contest last Sunday.
8. If it (not start) to rain, we would have walked to the museum.
9. We (swim) in the sea if there had not been so many sharks there.
10. If she had taken the taxi, she (arrive) on time.

**Exercise 2:** Match the items in column A with those in column B in order to make the First, Second or Third Conditional Sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. If I had turned left at the station,</td>
<td>a) our team would have won the match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If we hadn’t forgotten to take a map,</td>
<td>b) she would have woken up at 7 yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If Mike had made a shopping list,</td>
<td>c) we would have had it enough for breakfast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. If Ann had gone to bed early,</td>
<td>d) I wouldn’t have lost my way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. If my sister had bought more milk,</td>
<td>e) I would have taken my umbrella.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. If they had spoken English,</td>
<td>f) they would have moved up in the league.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Our team would have been in better form</td>
<td>g) we wouldn’t have got lost in the mountains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. If it had been a home game,</td>
<td>h) they wouldn’t have used a sign language.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. If our team had won the match,</td>
<td>i) he wouldn’t have forgotten to buy some coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. If I had heard the weather forecast,</td>
<td>j) if they had trained harder the weeks before.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 3:** Say what you would have done if the weather had been fine yesterday.

**Student A:** What would you have done, if the weather had been fine last weekend?

**Student B:** If the weather had been fine last weekend, I would have gone for a picnic with my friends.
Prompts: to go to the zoo, to go fishing, to go boating, to take my son to the seaside, to play football, to invite my friend for a walk, to go sightseeing, to plant rose-bushes in my garden, to go to the park, not to stay at home.

Exercise 4: Reword the following sentences making a Third Conditional sentence.

1. Peter went to the library last Friday because he needed a book.
2. Joe was in love with her and married her last autumn.
3. Our team trained hard and won the match on Sunday.
4. Mike didn’t come to the meeting yesterday because he was ill.
5. They didn’t come to your birthday party because you didn’t invite them.
6. My friend bought the tickets and we went to the theater two days ago.
7. It was cold the day before yesterday and we didn’t go to the beach.
8. Mary didn’t work hard and failed her English exam.
9. My father dropped his watch the other day and it stopped.
10. John met Suzy by chance and invited her to the Italian restaurant.

Exercise 5: Fill in the correct tense.

After I graduated from University, I applied for a marketing position with a prominent bank with branches all over the world. I didn’t get the job because they wanted someone who spoke Spanish fluently. I didn’t take Spanish in high school. I took an acting class instead. If I (take) Spanish, I (get) the job. Just imagine, if I had actually gotten the job, I (move) to Spain. My entire life (go) in a totally different direction. If I had accepted the job and moved to Spain, I (meet) a Spanish woman and (get) married. If that had actually happened, I probably (stay) in Spain. We (have) three children. Unfortunately, I didn’t get the job and I didn’t go to Spain. I got a boring job and I live alone. If I had just taken Spanish, my life (be) much more interesting.
**E. Mixed Conditional**

Условные предложения смешанного типа (*Mixed Conditional*) выражают прошлые события с результатом в настоящем (mixed second/third conditional; mixed third/second conditional).

**Form:**
- *if* + past simple, would have + past participle;
- *if* + past perfect, would + bare infinitive

**Examples:**
- If she *liked* me, she *would have told* me the story yesterday.
- If Sonya *hadn’t missed* the plane, she *would be* here by now.

**Exercise 1:** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

1. If Mary (*like*) cheese, she (*buy*) it yesterday.
2. If you (*take*) your medicine yesterday, you (*be*) well now.
3. My sister (*not feel*) so hungry now if she (*have*) a proper lunch.
4. If Columbus (*not discover*) America, we (*have*) no New York and no skyscrapers.
5. Pete (*not leave*) his book at the University last Friday if he (*not be*) so absent-minded.
6. They (*go*) to the theater today if he (*not lose*) their tickets the day before yesterday.
7. If my parents (*call*) me yesterday, I (*meet*) them at the station today.
8. If Ann (*not move*) to London two months ago, we (*enter*) the same University this year.
9. Mr. Black (*feel*) much better today if he (*not drink*) so much last night.
10. If my flat (*be*) bigger, I (*invite*) more friends to my birthday party last Sunday.

**Exercise 2:** Match the items in column A with those in column B.

If he knew her, he would have spoken to her yesterday.
1. If he knew her, a) she would have been contacted yesterday.
2. If he hadn’t lost his job, b) he would have eaten paella last night.
3. If his pet hadn’t died, c) he wouldn’t be waiting for him now.
4. If she had a mobile phone, d) they wouldn’t be tired now.
5. If Tom had seen the boss earlier, e) she would have had a good time in Paris.
6. If he were not allergic to seafood, f) he would have spoken to her yesterday.
7. If I hadn’t lost my map, g) he would be a champion now.
8. If she spoke French, h) I wouldn’t take the bus today.
9. If he hadn’t lost the race, i) he wouldn’t be unemployed now.
10. If she had gone to the bank yesterday j) I wouldn’t ask for directions.
11. If they hadn’t gone to the party last night, k) she would have some money now.
12. If I hadn’t crashed my car, l) he would not be upset now.

Revision

As you remember there are four types of conditionals. Can you identify them in the following sentences?

- If you squeeze an icicle in your hands, it melts.
- If it rains tomorrow we, will stay at home.
- If I were a millionaire, I would share the money with you.
- If you hadn’t called me last night, I would have slept peacefully.

TEST

**TASK I.** Complete the Conditional Sentences by putting the verbs into the correct form.
1. If he (drop) the vase, it would have broken.
2. If you have to do the washing up, I (help) you.
3. I wouldn't run away if I (see) a spider.
4. We'd have given you a lift if you (not have) your bike with you.
5. If you had listened to me then, the accident (not happen).
6. If we (not get) tickets for the concert, we'll stay at home.
7. They'd go by bus if they (not have) a car.
8. She (hear) us if you don't stop laughing.
9. He (not take) the bread if he hadn't been hungry.

**TASK II.** Match column A with column B:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. If I had time,</td>
<td>a) if he gets the afternoon off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If you speak English,</td>
<td>b) if I had seen him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If they had gone for a walk,</td>
<td>c) I'll take the bus home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. If she comes to see us,</td>
<td>d) they would have turned the lights off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I would have told you,</td>
<td>e) you will get along with them perfectly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Would you mind</td>
<td>f) nobody would do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. If they had invited me,</td>
<td>g) I would go shopping with you today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. My friend will meet me at the station</td>
<td>h) we will go to the zoo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. If I didn't do it,</td>
<td>i) if I opened the window?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. If my father doesn't pick me up,</td>
<td>j) I wouldn't have said no.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TASK III.** Complete the First, Second and Third Conditional Sentences by putting the verbs into the correct form.

1. If they (have) time at the weekend, they will come to see us.
2. If we (sneak) out quietly, nobody will notice.
3. If we (know) about your problem, we would have helped you.
4. If I (be) you, I would not buy that dress.
5. We (arrive) earlier if we had not missed the bus.
6. If I (not have) a mobile phone, my life would not be complete.
7. Okay, I (get) the popcorn if you buy the drinks.
8. If I (have) a lot of free time, I would go for a long walking tour.
9. She (go) out with you if you had only asked her.
10. I (not read) your diary if you had not hidden it in such an obvious place.

**TASK IV.** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (Conditional 1, 2, 3)

**Student A:** If you pass a post office, will you buy a newspaper, please?

**Student B:** Yes, certainly.
1. Mother: If you …… (pass) the supermarket after school, ……you (buy) some bread and cheese?
   Peter: Yes, certainly.
2. John: I felt very tired at work yesterday.
   Mike: Well, if you…… (not watch) the late film, you …… (not feel) so tired
3. Ann: Should I buy that house?
   Suzy: Why not? If I …… (have) a lot of money, I ……(buy it) myself
4. Bob: Mum, can I have some ice-cream, please?
   Mother: If you ……(behave) yourself, I …… (buy) you some later.
5. Ann: My brother looks very upset at the moment.
   Suzy: If I ……(be) you, I ……(talk) to him about it.
6. Father: What time will you be home tonight, Mary?
   Mary: I’m not sure. If I …… (go) to see my friend after the University, I….. (call) you.
7. Peter: David crashed his car yesterday.
   John: I know, but if he ……(not drive) it too fast, he ……(not crash).
8. Suzy: If we ……(be) rich, we ……(spend) our holiday in Greece next year.
   Peter: Well, unfortunately we aren’t rich.

**TASK V .Translate into English.**

1. Если бы я чувствовал лучше сегодня, я бы пошел в кино со своим другом.
2. Если бы ты поехала с нами вчера, ты бы хорошо провела время.
3. Мы бы послала тебе открытку из Лондона, если бы мы вспомнили твой адрес.
4. Джон купил бы новую машину, если бы у него было много денег.
5. На твоем месте я бы не покупала этот дом. Он очень старый.
6. Если бы Ольга поехала в Англию прошлым летом, она посетила бы все достопримечательности Лондона.
7. Если бы он знал английский язык хорошо, то читал бы Дж. Лондона в оригинале.
8. Он был бы лучшим студентом факультета, если бы не был таким ленивым.
9. Если бы вы объяснили Нику ситуацию тогда, он бы вам помог.
10. Если бы Питер получил твое письмо вчера, он бы позвонил тебе.
11. Я бы сказал вам который час, если бы у меня были часы.
12. Мэри вышла бы замуж за Майкла, если бы любила его.
13. Если бы сейчас было лето, они бы поехали в Турцию.
14. Если бы мой друг не следовал советам врача, он бы не поправился так быстро.
Unit 12. Verbals

C. The Infinitive
D. The Gerund
E. The Participle

C. The Infinitive

Инфинитив имеет формы трех грамматических категорий глагола:

- временной отнесенности (Perfect, Non-Perfect)
- залога (Active, Passive)
- вида (Continuous, Non-Continuous).

Study the forms of the Infinitive in the English language. Ask questions, if any.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Continuous</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Perfect</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>to have written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to have come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Употребление форм инфинитива

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Форма Non-Perfect употребляется:</strong></td>
<td><strong>Форма Perfect употребляется для обозначения действия, предшествующего действию, выраженному сказуемым:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• для обозначения действия, происходящего одновременно с действием, выраженным сказуемым: I am glad <em>to see you.</em> Я рад вас <em>видеть.</em></td>
<td>I am glad <em>to have seen</em> him. Я рад, что <em>посмотрел</em> его.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• для обозначения действия безотносительно ко времени его совершения: <em>To swim</em> is pleasant. <em>Плавать</em> приятно.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Отрицательная форма инфинитива образуется при помощи отрицательной частицы *not,* которая ставится перед инфинитивом.

*He was told not to book tickets for the train.*
*Его попросили не *заказывать* билеты на поезд.

**Exercise 1.** Use the infinitive in brackets in the active or passive voice.

1. There was a chance for her (to turn) over a new leaf in her life.
2. Her dress which was in the bag had (to iron).
3. I wanted no one (to take) notice of me.
4. There's nothing more (to see) here.
5. I wanted (to persuade) her, (to clear) things up - or to let things (to clear) up by you.
6. She seemed (to lose) heart in the business after that.
7. Helen is one of those people whose fate is (to devote) to others.
8. I hoped that I should never (to send) to that war.
9. Outside men's voices could (to hear).
10. The cows were driven into the yard (to milk).

**Exercise 2.** Paraphrase the following sentences using the Infinitive Active and Passive.

1. Ann was struck when she heard of his sudden death.
2. When he felt worse, he was sorry that he hadn't consulted the doctor.
3. They were shocked when they found the flat in such an awful mess.
4. She was afraid she might be taken to hospital.
5. She was extremely happy when she found her children safe and sound.
6. Nick was sure that he would be offered a vacancy.
7. She was lucky enough that she’d been given another chance to admire the
masterpiece.
8. She was afraid that she would burst into tears again.

**Exercise 3.** Respond to the following using the necessary form of the Infinitive Active and Passive after the modal verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Student A:</th>
<th>Student B:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Why is Jack so gloomy?</td>
<td>He may have had a good talking to at the Dean’s office. I saw him leaving it after classes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. We are still on bad terms, you know. (might, to apologize)
2. His recovery was quite a miracle. (may, not to give up hope)
3. His bad habit of biting nails irritates me. (must, to be very nervous)
4. She's absolutely washed out. (must, not to sleep a wink last night)
5. She's such a tease. (should, to teach her a lesson)
6. I don't quite like the programme we’ve made up. (can, to be changed)
7. She's been in low spirits since morning. (must, to be hurt)
8. The boy’s shivering all over. (may, to be frightened by a thunder)
9. She had a new attack of appendicitis the other day. (should, to be operated on)
10. She was beaming with pride. (must, to be conferred a diploma)

**Exercise 4.** Use the infinitive in brackets in the perfect or non-perfect form.

1. He was sorry (to miss) so many classes before the exams.
2. I started (to walk) on tiptoe.
3. We are happy (to score) another goal. Now we are going to win!
4. She is not likely (to take) him into her confidence.
5. We must (to sit) there, with scarcely a word, for over an hour.
6. She was relieved (to feel) that she wasn’t alone.
7. He tried (to give) her a ring for Christmas.
8. I am sorry (to offend) you in public.

**Exercise 5.** Use the verbs in brackets in the required form.

1. I like (give) presents to friends, but even more I like (give) gifts.
2. She is so lucky (have) such a good family, (see) their love and care.
3. One more window remained (wash).
4. The child is so pale! She ought (have) a change of food and air.
5. I want (take) my words back. I'm sorry (call) your name.
6. The case was urgent. The man had (operate on).
7. He was sorry (not notice) the fax on the secretary’s table.
8. But what kind of rules might (require)?
9. The rules (leave) to the Government to decide.
10. Everybody is going (give) a rise.
11. Parenthood is the only 24-hour-a-day job for which you (not pay).
12. English people don't like (tell) what to do.

**Exercise 6. Translate into English.**
1. Я очень сожалею, что не заказала лекарство вчера.
2. Она надеялась, что пройдет рентген до начала занятий, но не успела.
3. Николай счастлив, что ему дали стипендию.
4. Она должна быть, тратит много денег на книги.
5. Он хотел прочитать курс лекций по современному искусству, но его неожиданно послали в командировку в Москву.
6. Ей очень не повезло, что она сломала ногу.
7. Он сожалел, что не пошел на прощальный ужин.
8. Она боялась, что не догонит группу, так как проболела целый месяц.
9. Футболисты были счастливы, что выиграли матч.
10. Студенты довольны, что получили хорошие оценки на экзамене.

The Infinitive is generally used with the particle “to”. However there are some exceptions to the rule. Study the following rules. Ask questions, if any.

### Инфинитив без частицы to

В современном английском языке инфинитив употребляется с частицей to. Однако, в следующих случаях частица to не употребляется:

1. **После вспомогательных глаголов**
   - I don’t know.
   - They didn’t play tennis yesterday.

2. **После модальных глаголов** (за исключением ought to, be to, have to):
   - I can go there alone.
   - We may play darts.

3. **После глаголов чувственного восприятия** (to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to notice, etc.), употребляемых в действительном залоге в инфинитивных конструкциях:
   - I saw him enter the house.

4. **После глаголов to let, to make**:
   - Let me see!
   - He always makes me laugh.

5. **После выражений** had better, would rather/sooner, can not but:
I’d rather go there.

6. В вопросительных предложениях, начинающихся с why:
   Why not speak to her?

7. После слов than, rather than, but, except:
   He did nothing but/except play cards.
   I’ll take a taxi rather than walk.

Exercise 7. Use to before the Infinitives where possible.

1. We did everything we could ... make him ... join us.
2. You can't ... make me ... do what I don't want .... .
3. Are you sure you can ... afford ... waste another year?
4. You need ... take more care of yourself.
5. It would be very foolish ... let the child ... have his way.
6. Let the next student ... come in now.
7. We'd rather ... take a train than ... fly.
8. Why not ... go with us? Let's ... have fun.
9. You'd better ... stay in bed not ... make your cold ... get worse.
10. I need a car ... get to my country-house.
11. He can't but ... admire her beauty and talent.
12. You ought ... have told me all this before.
13. We got them ... rebuild the house.
14. He was seen ... enter the house through the back door.
15. What made you ... terrorize me? — I was made ... do it.
16. Will you be able ... let your son ... decide his future?
17. He made me ... do it all over again.
18. She can ... sing quite well.
19. He will be able ... swim very soon.
20. I used ... live in a caravan.

Study the functions of the Infinitive in the English sentence. Ask questions, if any.
Функции инфинитива в предложении

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Функция</th>
<th>Пример</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Подлежащее.</td>
<td>Indeed, <em>to know</em> him is to love him. Действительно, <em>знать</em> его значит любить его.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Часть сложного подлежащего.</td>
<td>The delegation is expected <em>to arrive</em> tomorrow. Ожидается, что делегация <em>прибудет</em> завтра.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Составная часть сказуемого.</td>
<td>The most important thing is <em>to read</em> a lot. Самое важное – это много <em>читать</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They continued <em>to discuss</em> the matter. Они продолжали <em>обсуждать</em> вопрос.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You must <em>say</em> it now. Вы должны <em>сказать</em> об этом сейчас.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Дополнение.</td>
<td>I invited Peter <em>to come</em> with us. Я пригласил Петю <em>поехать</em> с нами.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Часть сложного дополнения.</td>
<td>I want you <em>to join</em> us. Мне хочется, чтобы вы <em>присоединились</em> к нам.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Определение.</td>
<td>He had a great wish <em>to see</em> his mother again. Ему очень хотелось снова <em>увидеть</em> свою маму.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Обстоятельство цели и следствия.</td>
<td>He went to the airport <em>to meet</em> his friend. Он поехал в аэропорт, чтобы <em>встретить</em> друга.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He was too tired <em>to listen</em> to her. Он так устал, что не мог <em>слушать</em> ее./ Он был слишком усталым, чтобы <em>слушать</em> ее.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 8.** Complete the following using the infinitive

*a) as predicative:*
1. All they do is...
2. To get straight to the best is...
3. The only safe and sane thing to do was...
4. What my father should do is...
5. My original idea was...

*b) as subject:*
1. ...is not my custom.
2. ...is quite unusual for her.
3. ...was the last thing any man wanted.
4. ...is a hardship.

*c) as object:*
1. I order...
2. I didn't mean...
3. Has your mother persuaded you...?
4. It occurred to me...
5. Don't bother....

*d) as attribute:*
1. He regretted his inability...
2. There is nothing...
3. His wife was the first...

*e) as adverbial modifier of purpose:*
1. The family had gathered...
2. She might have dropped in...
3. She bowed graciously and turned...
4. We climbed up the mountain...
5. He rose from his chair...

*f) as adverbial modifier of result:*
1. The novel was easy enough...
2. She was too sad...
3. He couldn't do enough...
4. He knew enough of the country not...
5. He was too astonished...

**Exercise 9.** Complete the following choosing a suitable infinitive from the list below.

1. But I quite see it is one of those things that have got....
2. Now we can get our heads together and ... what is best....
3. Really it is too dreadful. One feels one must do something ... oneself cheerful.
4. But nobody could ... it for sure.
5. I'm going ... my coffee now and I don't want ... anybody.
6. Don't you think I'm old enough ... of myself.
7. "Very good of you ... me." He shook hands with them both.
8. "This story made me ... of him at once," said Miss Marple.
9. You could taste the dirt in the air and it always seemed....
10. The whole town seemed....

**Exercise 10.** Change the sentences using the Infinitive as part of a predicative.

**Student A:**

1. It's difficult to understand your humour.
2. It was not easy to diagnose the illness.

**Student B:**

1. It's easy to cook pasta.
2. Pasta is easy to cook.
3. It's hard to please people like you.
4. It's very hard to deal with my uncle.
5. It will be very hard to get along with him.

Exercise 11. Respond to the following. Supply a natural context.
Student A:          Student B:
1. The novel is boring. I can’t read it.
2. She is a charming little creature. It’s pleasant to look at her.
3. He is a shallow man. Don’t deal with him.
4. Jane is a very narrow-minded girl. I can’t talk to her.
5. My friend looks a new girl after the trip. I can’t recognize her.
6. The record is not to be had for love or money. You can’t get it.
7. It is hard to recognize my aunt.
8. It is hard to please her.
9. It’s difficult to explain his behaviour.

Exercise 12. Translate into English.
1. В этих ботинках очень удобно ходить. Я ношу их уже два года.
2. Он очень вспыльчивый человек. С ним очень трудно ладить.
3. Вам очень трудно угодить. Вы всегда придиретесь ко мне.
4. Молодой человек отрастил бороду и усы, и его трудно узнать.
5. Это такое счастье - видеть тебя здоровым и невредимым.
6. Наш план заключался в том, чтобы отправиться туда рано утром.
7. Наш долг - любой ценой спасти бесценные коллекции картин.
8. У нее красивый низкий голос и ее приятно слушать.
9. На ваш вопрос трудно ответить. Вы поставили меня в тупик.
10. Реку опасно переплывать в этом месте, лучше пройти по мосту.
11. Почти невозможно заставить его употреблять активный словарь.
12. Врач сказал, что эту мазь очень сложно приготовить.
13. Он говорит так быстро, что его трудно понять.
Exercise 13. Complete the following sentences.

1. ... that is the question. 9. What I want is ...
2. ... is to believe. 10. The main point is ...
3. ... is my aim in life. 11. To travel means ...
4. ... would be madness. 12. The only thing to do was ...
5. It makes me feel good ... 13. To tell a white lie is ...
6. It was unnatural ... 14. To live is ...
7. It annoyed them ... 15. To be up to date means ...
8. ... is everybody's wish. 16. The secret of life is ...

Exercise 14. Combine the sentences so as to use the infinitive.
A: Mr. Simpson is very old. He can't work.
   Mr. Simpson is too old to work.

B: My cousin plays the violin well. He can give a concert.
   My cousin plays the violin well enough to give a concert.

1. The apple you gave me is so sour. I can't eat it.
2. She is still young. She can't travel to London alone.
3. He was very late. He didn't catch the 12:30 train.
4. You don't know the poem well. You can't recite it in front of the class.
5. He was very far. He couldn't see what they were doing.
6. The water in the lake is very cold. I can't bathe.
7. You are very quick. You can easily catch up with the group.
8. You don't understand it. You are too young.
9. You are clever. You can answer any question.
10. The weather is warm. We can go out.
11. This tea is too hot. I can't drink it.
12. You were too angry. You couldn't speak.
13. It is so foggy today. I can't drive the car.
14. He has recovered. He can attend classes.
15. He is strong enough. He can climb up this mountain.

Exercise 15. Make up sentences using the following infinitive phrases parenthetically.
Student A:

To put it mildly, I was dissatisfied with the performance.
The Complex Object (Сложное дополнение)

В английском языке после некоторых переходных глаголов употребляется конструкция, называемая **Complex Object** (сложное дополнение).

Complex Object обычно состоит из существительного в общем падеже или личного местоимения в объектном падеже и инфинитива с *to* или без *to*, что зависит от глагола-сказуемого.

He wants you to help him.
Он хочет, чтобы вы помогли ему.

He asked Ann to show him the letter.
Он попросил Аню показать ему письмо.

I saw Peter give her the book.
Я видела, как Петя дал ей книгу.

Конструкция Complex Object чаще всего переводится на русский язык дополнительными придаточными предложениями, вводимыми союзами *как, что, чтобы*.

1. Конструкция Complex Object с инфинитивом с *to* употребляется:

а) после глаголов, обозначающих умственную деятельность:

*to think, to consider, to believe, to know* в значении «считать, полагать»

*to expect* – «ожидать, полагать»

*to suppose* – «полагать, предполагать»

*to find* – «находить, полагать»

*to understand* – «полагать» и др.

I don't expect them to get back before next Tuesday.
Я полагаю, что они не вернутся раньше следующего вторника.
I understood you to have finished the job.
Я полагал, что вы уже закончили работу.

The coach found the young goal-keeper (to be) very skilful.
Тренер считал, что молодой вратарь - очень опытный (игрок).

б) после глаголов и сочетаний, выражающих желание, ожидание:
to wish, to want, should (would) like и др.

I wish the matter to be settled today.
Я хочу, чтобы этот вопрос был разрешен сегодня.

I’d like you to help me with the translation.
Мне хотелось бы, чтобы вы помогли мне сделать перевод.

в) после глаголов, обозначающих принуждение, приказ, разрешение, просьбу:
to order, to force, to tell, to ask, to allow и др.

He told his assistant to get everything ready.
Он велел (приказал) своему помощнику все подготовить.

The customs officer asked the young man to open his suitcase.
Таможенник попросил молодого человека открыть чемодан.

Примечания:
1. После сказуемого, выраженного глаголами to consider, to find, to understand и др., глагол to be в конструкции Complex Object часто опускается.

   Everyone considered him a very kind man.

2. Конструкция Complex Object с инфинитивом без to употребляется:

   а) после глаголов физического восприятия:
to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to notice и др.

      For a while he watched the clerk check other people in.
      В течение некоторого времени он наблюдал за тем, как администратор оформлял других приезжих.

      Everyone heard the assistant-manager apologize to him.
      Все слышали, как помощник управляющего извинился перед ним.

   б) после глаголов to make, to let:
I wonder what made him withdraw his proposal.
Интересно, что заставило его снять свое предложение.

Don't let the boy disturb her while she is working.
Не позволяйте мальчику беспокоить ее в то время, когда она работает.

**Exercise 16.** Insert the particle to in constructions with the infinitive where necessary.

1. The room made him ... feel embarrassed.
2. They want me ... run out.
3. I heard him ... go downstairs.
4. She could not bring herself ... tell him about Vesta.
5. Paul felt his heart ... melt.
6. Suddenly he saw her ... rise and ... turn away.
7. At first he believed them ... be married.
8. The colonel ordered everyone ... wear a gas mask.
9. I forced him ... eat, and after luncheon I made him ... lie down.
10. I told the driver ... take me to the hospital fast.
11. I never knew him ... stand and ... look at that beautiful, calm face.
12. She suddenly observed Richard ... emerge from the drawing-room.
13. Did you see Miss Perbmarch ... enter or ... leave the house?
14. She persuaded him ... see a doctor.

**Exercise 17.** Form objective predicative constructions with the infinitive.

Student A:

1. I don't wish you to understand me.

1. He wanted to call you, but I persuaded (he, to wait) until morning.
2. I cannot allow (you, to throw) away an enormous property like this.
3. Then she turned to the window and asked (me, to open) it.
4. Now, can I trouble (you, to come) in here?
5. I saw (my mother, to pause) and (to put) her hand to her forehead.
6. She laughed and I heard (she, to strike) a match.
7. Old Jolyon saw (his brother's face, to change).
8. Maybe I could get (he, to pay) her seventy-five a week.
9. She hated (people, to guess) at her poverty.
10. He flushed indignantly but forced (himself, to answer).
11. They expected (I, to say) clever things.
**Exercise 18.** Respond to the following:

**Student A:**

- Jack is a great lover of sports.

**Student B:**

- Yes, indeed. I often see him ski in the park. He is very keen on it.

1. My new friend is a great football fan. (to shout for)
2. My mother is always steady and full of common sense. (not to lose her temper)
3. John is a very experienced motorist. (to drive in a race)
4. I think Ann will make an outstanding pianist. (play the piano)

**Exercise 19.** Answer the questions.

**Student A:**

1. Have you ever heard your friend complain of smth or seen her lose her temper?
2. Are you a football fan? Do you often go to the stadium to see your favourite football team play? When did you see your team win a game? (lose a game) What are your impressions of the match?
3. Have you ever watched the sun rise and set? What did you feel watching the sun rise (set)?
4. What do you feel when you are taken ill with the flu? Do you feel your limbs ache? Do you feel your heart hurt?
5. Have you ever seen Plisetskaya dance on the stage? Why do people like to watch her dance? When did you see her dance? Did you see her dance on TV?

**Exercise 20.** Make up dialogues to the model.

**Student A:**

- I'm anxious to have a new pair of shoes for summer wear. (to wish)

**Student B:**

- Do you want me to give it to her as a New Year present?

1. Mother is very anxious to have a new vacuum-cleaner.
   - I do, if you can afford it.

2. I am keen on oranges, mum. (to like)

3. I wonder if you have booked tickets for the plane. (to intend)

4. Jack is mad on hockey and is anxious to learn to play it. (to want)

5. What will you order for dinner? Is there salmon on the menu? (like)
**Exercise 21.** Recast the following sentences so as to use objective predicative constructions with the infinitive.

**Student A:**

1. They required that I should arrive at 8 a.m.
2. The judge ordered that the prisoner should be released.
3. I believe they are very good at physics.
4. He felt that she was unreasonable and unjust.
5. He knew he was a bad leader.
6. I think his father is one of the heads in Universal Stores.
7. He thought I was just a kid to be ordered.
8. I don’t expect you'll think of me.
9. I think both of you are too simple to be dishonest.

**Student B:**

I still consider we were right to resist them.

**Exercise 22.** Complete the following so as to use objective predicative constructions with the infinitive.

**Student A:**

1. She saw two of the girls...
2. She felt the wind...
3. Andrew Manson considered his work...
4. They had nothing but a desire to make a dream...
5. He watched and suddenly he saw her...
6. Well, I let them...
7. The window was open, and he could hear somebody...
8. Will you come over and watch me...
9. You will allow me...
10. I don’t order anybody...

**Exercise 23.** Paraphrase the following:

**Student A:**

I believe her to be familiar with many foreign languages.

**Student B:**

I believe that she is familiar with many foreign languages.

I consider us to be right to resist them.
1. I think that the book is perfect.
2. Don’t you find that the painting is a masterpiece?
3. I knew that he was an ordinary man.
4. The fans expected that their team would win the game.
5. I believe that it is true.
6. We thought that the lecture was highly useful and instructive.
7. The teacher considered that my answer was incorrect.

**Exercise 24.** Paraphrase the following. Use the OIC after the verbs: *to make, to have, to get.*

Model A: He insisted that I should go to the doctor to have my blood pressure tested.
He got me to go to the doctor to have my blood pressure tested.

Model B: The teacher’s approval caused me to feel happy.
The teacher’s approval made me feel happy.

Model C: The captain insisted that the soldiers obeyed his order.
The captain had the soldiers obey his orders.

1. The familiar melody caused me to feel sad.
2. The manager told the secretary to send the letters airmail.
3. It's not easy to persuade him to drive slower.
4. He insisted that I should accept the vacancy at their office.
5. She persuaded me to buy the records of Beethoven.

**Exercise 25.** Transform these sentences according to the models.

a) Did he remind them about the meeting?
   Yes, I heard him remind them about the meeting.
1. Did the doctor write out a prescription? (to see)
2. Did she tell Peter she was grateful for his help? (to hear)
3. Did Ann beat the record? (to watch)
4. Did he take his temperature before dinner? (to make)

b) Should I book tickets for the nine o'clock train?
   Yes, I want you to book tickets for the nine o'clock train.
1. Should the boy be examined by the doctor? (to want)
2. Should she take part in the figure-skating competition? (should like)
3. Should I reserve a table by telephone? (to want)
4. Should I get in touch with him today? (should like)

c) Do you expect that he'll become a brilliant figure skater?
   Yes, I expect him to become a brilliant figure skater.
1. Do you expect that the competition will attract a lot of people?
2. Did you expect that John would go in for swimming?
3. Did you expect that she would give a brilliant performance?
4. Do you think that he'll help us with our packing?
Exercise 26. Translate into English using objective predicative constructions.
1. Она видела, что он взял эту книгу.
2. Я не хочу, чтобы вы приходили так рано.
3. Вы заметили, как она ушла?
4. Я ожидая, что она вернется около пяти.
5. Он не слышал, как его дочь вошла в комнату.
6. Его мать хочет, чтобы он стал врачом.
7. Я не спала и слышала, как она вышла из комнаты.
8. Что заставило его отказаться от этой поездки?
9. Мы предполагаем, что она быстро догонит группу.
10. Все считают ее умной и трудолюбивой.
11. Мы любим, когда он нам рассказывает интересные истории.
12. Я не имела в виду, чтобы вы заучивали этот текст наизусть.
13. Я хочу, чтобы вы были более внимательны.
14. Я подозреваю, что он взял мою книгу.
15. Я заставила ее выучить это стихотворение наизусть.

Complex Subject (Сложное подлежащее)

1. Complex Subject состоит из грамматического подлежащего и инфинитива, стоящего после сказуемого. Между подлежащим и инфинитивом существует логическая связь:

   *He* is expected to come back tonight.
   Ожидает, что он вернется сегодня вечером.

   *She* is said to have checked out.
   Говорят, что она уже выехала из гостиницы.

2. Инфинитив, входящий в конструкцию Complex Subject, может употребляться в формах *Continuous, Non-Continuous, Perfect* и *Non-Perfect Active* и *Passive*:

   *He* is known to be preparing for the examinations.
   Известно, что он готовится к экзаменам (сейчас).
*The delegation* is known *to have left* for home.

Сообщают, что *делегация уже выехала* домой.

*The report* is understood *to have been retyped*.

Полагают, что *доклад уже перепечатан*.

*He* seems *to have been speaking* for quite a while.

Кажется, *он уже довольно долго говорит*.

3. Конструкция **Complex Subject** употребляется, когда сказуемое выражено:

а) глаголами *to know, to believe, to consider, to report, to say, to think, to understand, to see, to hear* и др. в форме **Passive Voice**:

*He* is said *to prefer* skiing to skating.

Говорят, что *он предпочитает* лыжи конькам.

*Everyone* is believed *to have filled in* the customs declaration.

Полагают, что *все уже заполнили* таможенные декларации.

б) глаголами *to seem, to appear, to happen, to prove, to turn out* и др. в форме **Active Voice**:

*He* appears *to know* the subject better than the others.

Кажется (по-видимому), *он знает* этот предмет лучше других.

*The young man* turned out *to be* a skilful centre-forward.

Молодой человек оказался очень хорошим центральным нападающим.

Do you happen *to know* his sister's name?

*Вы случайно не знаете*, как зовут его сестру?

в) глаголом *to be + likely, unlikely, certain, bound*:

*Their plans* are likely *to change* in the future.

*Их планы*, вероятно, в будущем изменятся.

*They* are certain *to support* your proposal.

*Они определенно поддержат* ваше предложение.

*She* is unlikely *to disturb* him.

Вряд ли (маловероятно, что) *она помешает* ему (побеспокоит его).

*They* are bound *to come*.

*Они обязательно (непременно) придут.*
**Exercise 27.** Point out subjective predicative constructions with the infinitive in the following sentences. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. But I don't happen to know anything.
2. You would never be likely to fall in love with me.
3. It doesn't seem to do her any harm.
4. We are working now and we are sure to pay you Saturday.
5. I was not sure how a reporter was supposed to behave on occasions like this.
6. She happens to be your daughter.
7. He thinks she's a secretary, but she turns out to be a writer.
8. A motor containing two foreigners is quite likely to have been noticed.
9. We have not been required to undertake any work.
10. I don't happen to see any difference.

**Exercise 28.** Paraphrase:

Student A:          Student B:

1. It is known that these things are liable to duty.
2. It is reported that yesterday's hockey match ended in a draw.
3. It is expected that the young figure dancer will win the gold medal.
4. It is said that all the hotels are full.
5. It is said that he's been very busy lately.
6. It is certain that their team will win the game.
7. It is unlikely that they have already passed through the customs.
8. It is likely that John Brown will join a professional team.
9. It is unlikely that he will give up figure skating.
10. It is certain that the play will be popular with young people.

Student A:          Student B:

1. It appears they've grown tired of waiting.
2. It seems that he's a brilliant actor.
3. It appears that they're losing the game.
4. It turned out that he was a very good doctor.
5. It seems that he is not in the habit of coming in time.
6. They say that he is honest.
7. It appeared that he had done it well.
8. The man had read his papers, it seemed.
9. It is believed that his advice was ignored.
10. It appeared that Betty was delighted.

Exercise 29. Make the sentences passive.
Student A:

1. Everybody heard her say that.
2. The neighbour noticed the burglar get into the house.
3. The policeman saw the car disappear in the tunnel.
4. The public made the poet read some more of his poetry.
5. Don't worry. We'll let you go to the match.
6. They consider him to be an expert in his sphere.
7. Everybody knows that this theatre was built by a famous architect.
8. They suspect that the teenager helped them.
9. We expect that they have learnt the truth.
10. It was announced that the pop-group had arrived.

Exercise 30. Paraphrase the following using subjective predicative constructions with the infinitive.
Student A:

1. She is busy today (to seem).
2. The situation has changed a lot (to appear).
3. The Crimea was visited by numerous hikers last summer (to know).
4. He didn't have any money with him (to happen).
5. This path is used quite often nowadays (to appear).
6. Nobody knew the way, so I had to return (to happen).
7. His plan is rather unrealistic (to appear).
8. She wasn't properly dressed (to happen).
9. Ann would never speak to me again (unlikely).
10. He was in high spirits when he got out of the train (to seem).
**Exercise 31.** Complete the following so as to use subjective predicative constructions with the infinitive.

Student A:

1. The girl seems...
2. The weather appears...
3. You are supposed...
4. Our friends are sure...
5. Everything seems...
6. Somebody was supposed...
7. Everything that morning seemed...
8. Several thousand people are expected...
9. Your home during the last few years seems...
10. I am forced...

**Exercise 32.** Translate into English using predicative constructions with the infinitive.

1. Этот дом, вероятно, будет построен в следующем месяце.
2. Предполагается, что на собрании выступит декан факультета.
3. Ее, кажется, очень хорошо обучили английскому языку.
4. Известно, что футбол — наиболее популярный вид спорта в Англии.
5. Вряд ли его спросят об этом.
6. Она, наверное, напишет ему письмо.
7. Этот роман, кажется, переведен с французского.
8. Маловероятно, что они смогут достать билеты на этот спектакль.
9. Вряд ли они знают мой адрес. Что заставляет вас думать, что они его знают?
10. Известно, что когда-то Британские острова были частью материка Европы.
11. Говорят, что они работают на Крайнем Севере с 1970 года.
12. Кажется, он очень пополнел за последнее время.
13. Считали, что она прекрасно играет в теннис.
14. Было известно, что он принимал участие в этой экспедиции.
15. Вряд ли игра закончится вничью.
16. Она оказалась хорошим преподавателем.
17. Я уверен, что вам понравится этот спектакль.
18. Новая картина молодого художника оказалась интересной.
19. Похоже на то, что она приняла его предложение.
20. Как оказалось, вечер прошел успешно.
**Exercise 33.** Read the following dialogue and point out predicative constructions with the infinitive in it. Make up your own dialogues using predicative constructions with the infinitive.

---

**Exercise 34.** Translate into English.
7. Они сказали, что подобное вряд ли случается дважды.
8. По-видимому, он собирается стать врачом.
9. Детям не разрешалось трогать кроликов.
10. Оказалось, что я его хорошо знаю.
11. С того времени вы, кажется, очень сильно изменились.
12. Слышили, как хлопнула входная дверь.
13. Предполагалось, что мы встретимся в шесть часов около школы.
14. Казалось, что они уже совсем его забыли.
15. Видели, как сверкнули его глаза, но он ничего не сказал.
16. Я, кажется, хорошо знаю вас.
17. Очень вероятно, что они будут благодарить меня за эту помощь.
18. Кажется, вы много знаете об этом городе.
19. Слышили, как открылась дверь, и кто-то вошел в комнату.
20. Случилось так, что меня не было дома, когда он звонил.

**TEST**

**TASK I.** Insert the particle “to” where necessary:
1. I have never heard her...play the piano.
2. She was made...get up earlier.
3. The teacher had the students... revise all the rules.
4. There was nothing... do but...play cards.
5. I felt my blood...freeze.
6. You'd better...set to work.
7. She felt the information...be false.
8. He did not know what...do.
9. Why not...get him...tell the truth.
10. They were seen...lock the gate.
11. We can't but...accept your invitation.
12. What makes you... think so?

**TASK II.** Open the brackets and use the right form of the Infinitives:
1. She is said (to work) hard at the report now.
2. The house turned out (to repair) lately.
3. You deserve (to praise) for this noble deed.
4. Aunt Polly seems (to be) an actress long ago.
5. We are happy (to win) the game.

**TASK III.** Paraphrase using the Complex Subject and Complex Object:
1. I believe that she was an actress once.
2. Olgasaw that her daughter was unhappy.
3. It turned out that we lived next door.
4. We consider that he has saved something for a rainy day.
5. Everybody hears that she is playing the piano.
6. I hear that you play tennis well.
7. Jane saw that the picture was not interesting.
8. It seems that he is working in the garden.

**TASK IV. Translate into Russian:**
1. Это правило легко выучить наизусть.
2. Единственное, что я хочу - увидеть своего внука.
3. Я пришёл не ссориться с вами.
4. Почему бы не уехать сегодня?
5. Тед слишком умен, чтобы задавать такие вопросы.
6. Шторм был такой сильный, что разрушил старый дом.
7. Ей не нравится, когда к ней придираются.
8. Мы не знали, куда идти.
9. Она очень хочет, чтобы её сын поступил в университет.
10. Дождь заставил нас вернуться домой.
11. Анна согласилась, чтобы мы отложили свой отъезд.
12. Его называют талантливым художником.
13. Сообщают, что погода изменилась.
14. Я вижу, что вы меня не понимаете.
15. Я видела, как вы закрыли дверь.
16. Мы слышали, как кто-то постучал в дверь.
17. Оказывается, что они давно не виделись.
18. Известно, что этот дом был построен в прошлом веке.

**D. The Gerund**

Герундий, как и инфинитив, - неличная форма глагола. В русском языке нет соответствующей глагольной формы. Герундий обладает как свойствами существительного, так и глагола.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Функция</th>
<th>Примеры</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Подлежащее</td>
<td><em>Reading is very useful.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Чтение очень полезно.

Seeing and believing are different things. Увидеть и поверить – это разные вещи.

2. Часть сказуемого:
- составного именного
- составного глагольного (после глаголов begin, start, continue, go on, finish, etc.)

| Составного именного | Seeing is believing. Увидеть значит поверить. |
| Составного глагольного | Stop talking, please. Перестаньте разговаривать, пожалуйста. |

3. Дополнение:
- прямое
- предложное

| Прямое | Excuse my interrupting. Извините, что я вас прерываю. |
| Предложное | She insists on our joining them. Она настаивает, чтобы мы присоединились к ним. |

4. Определение (вводится предлогами of и for после существительных)

| This is the best way of settling the problem. Это лучший способ решения данной проблемы. |

5. Обстоятельство (после предлогов on, after, before, besides, instead of, without, etc.)

| On receiving the telegram he left for home. Получив телеграмму, он выехал домой. |

| After reading the book I put it on the shelf. Прочитав книгу, я положил ее на полку. |

| He left the room without saying a word. Он вышел из комнаты, не сказал ни слова. |

Как и глагол, герундий имеет формы времени и залога.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-Perfect</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>writing</td>
<td>being written</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Perfect     | having written | having been written |

Герундий в форме действительного и страдательного залога
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Действительный залог</th>
<th>Страдательный залог</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Если действие, выраженное герундием, выполняется каким-либо лицом или предметом, то употребляется герундий в форме Active:</td>
<td>Герундий в форме Passive употребляется, когда действие совершается над каким-либо лицом или предметом:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t like seeing people off. Я не люблю провожать людей.</td>
<td>I don’t like being seen off. Я не люблю, когда меня провожают.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She denies having invited him to the party. Она отрицает, что пригласила его на вечеринку.</td>
<td>She denies having been invited to the party. Она отрицает, что ее пригласили на вечеринку.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Герундий в форме Active употребляется для обозначения действий страдательного залога после глаголов need, want, require, deserve и выражения to be worth:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-Perfect Gerund выражает:</td>
<td>Perfect Gerund выражает действие, которое предшествует действию, выраженному глаголом в личной форме</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• процесс в общем виде</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• действие, которое совершается одновременно с действием, выраженным глаголом в личной форме</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop talking! Прекратите разговаривать!</td>
<td>I remember having talked to him. Я помню, что уже разговаривал с ним.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am surprised at being shown the letter. Я удивлен, что мне показывают это письмо.</td>
<td>I am surprised at having been shown the letter. Я удивлен, что мне показали это письмо.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Non-Perfect Gerund употребляется для обозначения предшествующего действия после глаголов remember, stop, forget, regret, reproach, thank, excuse, blame, etc. и после предлогов after, on (upon), without. Однако, перфектная форма герундия в этих случаях также возможна.
On *hearing* the news she burst into tears.  
Услышав новость, она расплакалась.

Excuse me for *coming* late.  
Извините, что опоздал.

### Герундийные конструкции

Герундий может употребляться с притяжательным местоимением или существительным в притяжательном или общем падеже:

I insist on his/ Peter’s/ Peter *taking part* in the discussion.  
Я настаиваю на том, чтобы он/ Петя *принял участие* в обсуждении.

### Герундий употребляется после:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Глаголов с предлогами:</th>
<th>Существительных с предлогами:</th>
<th>Словосочетаний:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accuse of</td>
<td>art of</td>
<td>be afraid of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologize for</td>
<td>chance of</td>
<td>be angry for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve of</td>
<td>difficulty (in)</td>
<td>be aware of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame smb for</td>
<td>experience in</td>
<td>be bored with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel like</td>
<td>habit of</td>
<td>be busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive for</td>
<td>harm of</td>
<td>be capable of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congratulate on</td>
<td>idea of</td>
<td>be clever at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count on</td>
<td>importance of</td>
<td>be disappointed at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depend on</td>
<td>interest in</td>
<td>be engaged in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream of</td>
<td>means of</td>
<td>be excited about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear of</td>
<td>mistake of</td>
<td>be fed up with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform of</td>
<td>opportunity of</td>
<td>be fond of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insist on</td>
<td>plan for</td>
<td>be good/clever at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look forward to</td>
<td>point in</td>
<td>be grateful for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object to</td>
<td>preparation for</td>
<td>can't stand/bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persist in</td>
<td>process of</td>
<td>be guilty of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevent from</td>
<td>purpose of</td>
<td>be interested in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result in</td>
<td>reason for</td>
<td>be keen on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop from</td>
<td>right of</td>
<td>be pleased at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>succeed in</td>
<td>sense of</td>
<td>be proud of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspect smb of</td>
<td>skill in</td>
<td>be sorry for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank for</td>
<td>skill in</td>
<td>be sure of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think about/of</td>
<td>way of</td>
<td>be surprised at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warn against</td>
<td></td>
<td>be worried about</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 1.** Paraphrase using the Gerund:

Model A: He insisted that I should get rid of my bad habits.

He insisted on my *getting rid of* my bad habits.
Model B: He hates to be interrupted.
    He hates being interrupted.

Model C: I can boast I've seen a Bolshoi Theatre performance.
    I can boast of having seen a Bolshoi Theatre performance.

Model D: Nick is indignant because he’s been scolded for nothing.
    Nick is indignant at having been scolded for nothing.

Model E: She went out and didn't lock the door.
    She went out without locking the door.

1. Nick suggested that we should arrange a picnic on Sunday.
2. Children like to be read fairy-tales.
3. He denies that he stayed away from classes yesterday.
4. I don’t regret that I missed the concert.
5. Granny complains she hasn’t slept the whole night.
6. He bought the shoes but didn't try them on.
7. The football players were sorry they had lost yesterday's match.
8. The doctors managed to save the baby’s life.
9. We were astonished to see such a variety of scenery.
10. Little John was pleased that he had been taught how to ride a bike.
11. Finally she agreed to be seen off at the station.
12. I’m thankful to you that you’ve given me such a thrilling novel.
13. She managed to make good progress because she had worked much.
14. Before the doctor diagnosed the disease she took my blood pressure.
15. Mr. Brown held his cigarette but didn't light it.

**Exercise 2.** Supply a natural conversational context:

1. The world hockey championship was worth watching.
2. Small children need taking good care of.
3. His heart seemed to have stopped beating.
4. He was sick and tired of being found fault with.
5. We enjoyed doing cross-word puzzles.
6. The driver was fined for speeding.

**Exercise 3.** Complete the situations using the Gerund:

**Student A:**

The book is unfamiliar to me.

**Student B:**

I don’t remember ever reading it.
1. My body aches all over. (to feel like, to lie down)
2. It's all my fault. (to regret, to let someone down)
3. He is a keen traveller. (to boast of, to see many countries)
4. I didn’t mean to insult you. (to excuse, to be rude)
5. Your advice is of great value. (to thank, to help)
6. He has improved his pronunciation. (to be proud of, to make good progress)
7. We are pressed for time. (to put off, to discuss the matter)

Exercise 4. Complete the following using the gerund

a) as subject or predicative:
   1. There's no use...
   2. It was useless...
   3. It would be no good...
   4. Is it worth while...?
   5. His ambition was...

b) as a part of a compound verbal predicate:
   1. Doctor Flegg began...
   2. He kept...
   3. Now I will go on...
   4. John started...
   5. The officer finished...
   6. Suddenly he began ...
   7. In the silence he started....
   8. He immediately stopped...
   9. I could not help...
   10. She just continued....

c) as a non-prepositional object:
   1. He disliked...
   2. He had practically given up...
   3. Her mother mentioned...
   4. I hate....
   5. I distinctly remember...
   6. It involved...
   7. She would have enjoyed...
   8. Would you mind...?
   9. He badly needs...
   10. Presently he suggested...

d) as a prepositional object:
   1. George thought of...
   2. Presently we were talking about...
   3. But that won’t prevent you from...
   4. He kept me from...
   5. Thank you for...
   6. They persisted on...
   7. He has not succeeded in...
   8. She was counting on...
   9. He insists on...
   10. My sister is never tired of...
   11. I was looking forward to...
   12. You are quite sure about...
   13. You are fond of...
   14. I’m good at...

e) as an attribute:
   1. I really had no intention of...
   2. She has planned a way of...
   3. She gave the impression of...
   4. Not much in the habit of...
   5. He had the reputation of...
   6. He had an opportunity of...
   7. I found the cause of...
   8. There was a reason for not...
   9. Ralph spoke in the hope of...
   10. She had a chance of...
   11. He described the methods of...
   12. This gave him a sense of...

f) as an adverbial modifier:
   1. We worked without...
   2. You're trying to fight me in spite of...
   3. It would have been impossible to reach it without...
4. He had to go there himself in spite of...
5. The pupil answered without...
6. Yesterday he solved the greatest problem of his life by...
7. They looked at each other without...
8. She did not make a mistake because of...
9. I shocked them by...
10. She finished up by...
11. He proved it by...
12. He lit a cigarette before...

**Exercise 5.** Paraphrase using the right form of the Gerund:

**Student A:**

1. Mary is good at reading. The teacher praises her every time. (deserve)
2. The watch is slow for five minutes. I’ll have to repair it. (require)
3. The book is very interesting. Many people want to read it. (be worth)
4. Your plants are fading. You must water them at once. (want)
5. The dress has got wrinkled all over. Will you iron it? (need)

**Exercise 6.** Paraphrase the following using the Gerund.

**Model A:** Don't take this medicine. It's no good.
   It's no good taking this medicine.

**Model B:** You must visit the Historical Museum. It's worth it.
   The Historical Museum is worth visiting.

**Model C:** We couldn't hold the competition yesterday. They objected to it.
   They objected to our holding the competition.

1. He was given a ten-day leave. He insisted on it.
2. Don't try to book seats in the stalls. It's useless.
3. Don't hope for their assistance. It's no good.
4. He is going to be examined first. He doesn't object to it.
5. You shouldn't try to win the prize. It's no use.
6. Don't try to find an excuse. It's no good.
7. His behaviour is indecent. I don't approve of it.
8. The English like to play football. It's in their blood.
9. I always feel bored when talking to this man. I can't help it.
10. She's going to see London with her own eyes. She's looking forward to it.
11. You mustn't leave the research unfinished. The professor won't approve of it.
12. I'm always thrilled when I see this brilliant actress. I can't help it.
13. He wasn't going to marry her. He'd never thought of it.
14. You’ve been most helpful. I’m very grateful to you.

**Exercise 7. Translate into English:**

1. Не люблю вмешиваться в чужие дела.
2. Я помню, мама говорила мне, что это верное средство от гриппа.
3. Не забудь выключить газ.
4. Вдруг она перестала смеяться, и глаза ее стали серьезными.
5. Он остановился, чтобы прочитать афишу.
6. Я предлагаю дать ребенку лекарство, чтобы снять жар.
7. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы заказать билеты заранее.
8. Девочка неожиданно разрыдалась. Она была не в состоянии говорить.
9. Я привыкла рано вставать. Я люблю ходить по утреннему городу.
10. Я не одобряю, что ты купила автомобиль. Это слишком дорогая вещь.
11. Он решил отказаться от поездки в Сибирь.
12. Я не могу позволить себе путешествовать первым классом.
13. Я против того, чтобы меня посылали в командировку.
14. Его обвинили в том, что он украл деньги.
15. Бесполезно откладывать разговор с ним на завтра.

**Exercise 8. Substitute gerunds for the models:**

**Student A:**

1. I dislike it when he is doing nothing.
2. She does not like it when her son fixes things in a hurry.
3. I don't mind if you take up painting.
4. I hate it when you are impatient.
5. I don't like it when you feel upset.

**Student B:**

1. I hate it when you're late.

**Exercise 9. Complete these sentences using gerunds:**

**Student A:**

I insist on your borrowing those books from the library.
1. Forgive (I, to take up) so much of your time.
2. Do you mind (he, to join) us?
3. Does he feel like (to stay) here for another week?
4. I appreciate (you, to encourage) him when he failed in his first experiment.
5. He's busy (to explain) the programme to them.
6. She couldn't help (to argue) with him. He was certainly wrong.
7. She thanked him for (to collect) such valuable material.
8. Do you know the reason for (he, to feel discouraged)?
9. Is there any hope of (the plan, to be carried out) ahead of time?

**Exercise 10.** Complete the following using Gerund as an attribute:

1. He has no hope of....
2. I have no experience in ...
3. Is there any way of...?
4. She is in the habit of ...
5. What is the reason for...?
6. She dislikes the idea of ...
7. You have every opportunity of ...
8. There's a risk of his ...

**Exercise 11.** Respond to the following:

Student A: You are driving very fast, I'm afraid.
Student B: Don't worry. There's no risk of getting into a trouble.

1. You have some money about you and can afford buying the tie, can't you? (to dislike the idea of wearing such a loud tie)
2. I hear Lizzie had been seriously ill. (take every chance of curing the girl)
3. He is a heavy smoker and suffers from heart trouble. (to give up the habit of smoking so much)
4. More and more people in our country take up the study of foreign languages. What do you think of it? (to realize the importance of knowing a foreign language)
5. The weather in this part of the country is often changeable. You'd better put on rubber boots in case it rains. (no risk of my catching cold)

**Exercise 12.** Translate:

1. У меня привычка поздно спать по утрам. Мне нужно избавиться от нее.
2. Мне нравится ваша мысль сыграть партию в настольный теннис.
3. Есть ли у вас какая-либо возможность узнать ее номер телефона?
4. Она квалифицированная сестра, у нее большой опыт ухода за больными.
5. Есть ли какой-либо шанс спасти жизнь больного?
6. Туда невозможно добраться на машине.
7. Нет никакой необходимости делать пересадку.

**Exercise 13.** Complete these sentences using *chance of* -ing or *chance to*.... Each time use the verb in brackets:

1. I'd like to go to the concert but I've got no ... tickets now. They'll have been sold out.  (get)
2. He was badly injured in the crash but the doctors at the hospital say that he has a very good .... completely.  (recover)
3. 'Have you written that letter to Jack?' 'No, I didn't have a ... it today. There was so much else to do.'  (do)
4. There isn't a ... a cheap apartment in the city centre.  (find)
5. We're always very busy at work. We don't get much ... to each other.  (talk)
6. A lot of people have applied for this job. If I apply, I don't think I stand a very good ... it.  (get)
7. If you work hard at your job, you have a good ....  (be promoted)

**Exercise 14.** Paraphrase the following using the gerund as on adverbial modifier. Choose the appropriate prepositions.

Student A:  
Student B: 

1. Aunt Polly got very angry when she saw the broken sugar-bowl.
2. After we came to the airport, we had our luggage registered.
3. He left he room, he didn't apologize.
4. Some people can walk all day and don't get tired.
5. He waited long before he answered.
6. I learned the words. I pronounced them aloud.
7. When he was reciting a poem, he passed a line.
8. When she was copying the composition, she corrected some mistakes.
9. Though I was excited by the news, I kept my feelings back.
10. We made haste as we feared we might miss the bus.
Exercise 15. Translate what is given in brackets using the gerund.

1. (После того как я приняла таблетку от головной боли) I felt relieved.
2. (При проверке упражнения) I found a lot of mistakes in it.
3. (При переходе через улицу) he fell down and hurt himself badly.
4. They decorated the flat (расставив цветы в вазах).
5. The mother spoilt the boy (давая ему деньги на карманные расходы).
6. The whole day was spent in (приготовления к новогоднему балу).
7. You can learn a foreign language (постоянно разговаривая на нем).
8. She kept on talking (не давая мне возможности вставить хоть одно слово).
9. She left (не попрощавшись с гостями).
10. I won't leave London (не побывав в Британском музее).
11. You'll never recover from the disease (не принимая лекарства).
12. She can't go abroad (не получив визу).
13. A refrigerator is very handy (для хранения продуктов).
14. One should use a dictionary (для того, чтобы посмотреть значение слова).
15. (Несмотря на то, что он был уже зрелым художником) he was not famous.
16. I put on a warm coat and boots (боясь простудиться).
17. We were in a hurry (чтобы не опоздать на самолет).
18. She bit her lip and kept silent (чтобы не расплакаться).

1. I learn the words by repeating them many times.
2. You'd better wrap yourself up warmly for fear of catching a cold.
3. In spite of being excited, the student conducted the lesson nicely.
4. She passed by without recognizing me.
5. After pushing the door several times, I flung it open.

Exercise 17. Make up sentences using the following constructions with the gerund.

1. could not help smiling;
2. on hearing the news;
3. the habit of reading in bed;
4. a chance of speaking to her;
5. avoided looking at her;
6. without saying good-bye;
7. remembered reading;
8. had no intention of going;
9. gave up the idea of going;
10. instead of reading;
11. on the point of bursting into tears;
12. give up smoking;

When we were listening to his story we couldn’t help laughing.
13. after telling her (him); 14. what do you mean by saying; 15. before answering; 16. forgive me for being

Exercise 18. Make up questions using the gerund after the following words or word combinations. Let your fellow students answer them.

Student A: Student B:
1. to be worth; 2. to mind; 3. to insist on; 4. to prevent from; 5. the idea of; 6. instead of; 7. can't help; 8. to be tired of; 9. to give up; 10. to suggest; 11. to get used to; 12. the chance of; 13. to object to; 14. to be fond of; 15. to be surprised at; 16. to feel like

Exercise 19. Translate into English.
1. Простите, что я отнял у вас так много времени.
2. Считаете ли вы, что эту пьесу стоит поставить?
3. Откровенно говоря, я не знаю причины, почему он так расстроен.
4. Его родители возражали против того, чтобы он женился на Джейн.
5. Чарльзу не хотелось посвящать себя политической деятельности.
6. Главный инженер сейчас занят обсуждением деталей нового плана.
7. После того как он обдумал предложение, он решил отказаться от него.
8. Его нерешительность помешала ему выполнить работу вовремя.
9. Все хвалили его за то, что он был благоразумен.
10. Благодарю вас, что вы предупредили о том, что вы передумали.
11. Было очень приятно повидаться с вами.
12. Не имея чувства юмора, нельзя стать хорошим актером.

Exercise 20. Insert prepositions:
1. They succeeded in finding a good flat.
2. Can you stop the child from getting into mischief?
3. Thank you for coming.
4. He was accused of having broken the law.
5. I insisted on his coming with us.
6. Who is to blame for starting the fire?
7. Are you thinking of buying a house?
8. I apologize for being so awkward.
9. He has no intention of staying.
10. There is no chance of winning.
11. We had no opportunity of meeting interesting people there.
12. I have no experience …building houses.
13. There are different ways… solving this problem
14. Do you have any reason …saving such a thing?
15. Would you mind …closing the door?
16. He denied …having seen this man before.
17. You can hardly avoid …meeting her.
18. We've just missed …having nasty accident.
19. They postponed …sending an answer to the request.
20. My work involves …filing and typing letters.
21. There is no use crying over spilt milk
22. He didn't feel …going out.
23. He couldn't help… laughing.
24. She was afraid …falling.
25. He is slow …doing sums.
26. He is interested …developing the project.
27. She is sorry …being late.
28. He is proud …having won the chess tournament.
29. He was surprised …having been asked about it.

Exercise 21. In this exercise you have to write the correct preposition and to put the verb into the correct form. Use the verb in brackets at the end of each sentence.

Jack insisted on going out by himself.

1. After a long time we eventually succeeded…a flat. (find)
2. I've been thinking…for a new job. (look)
3. His parents didn't approve…him…out so late. (stay)
4. I wonder what prevented him …to the party. (come)
5. I'm getting hungry. I'm looking forward…dinner. (have)
6. I don't feel …today. (study)
7. Forgive me…you but I must ask you a question. (interrupt)
8. The arrested man was suspected…into a house. (break)
9. Have you ever thought…married? (get)
10. I've always dreamed…on a small island in the Pacific. (live)
11. The cold water didn't stop her…a swim. (have)
12. Have you ever been accused…a crime? (commit)
13. She apologized…so rude to me. (be)
14. We have decided…a new car. (buy)

Exercise 22. Complete the sentences. Add the necessary preposition.
1. He's very punctual. You can count....
2. I'm tired. I don't feel....
3. The people criticize the government...
4. The prisoner was accused....
5. Lifeguards rescue people....
6. I am out of work. I'm anxious....
7. The workers threatened the boss...
8. This programmer is an expert...
9. If you run out of money, you would have difficulty...
10. In a tight situation you have to find a way...
11. Teenagers spend a lot of money....
12. The police charged the motorist....
13. A journalist can be accused...
14. Tactless people make a habit...
15. Stars are getting huge money...

**Exercise 23.** Translate into Russian:
1. Я не привыкла готовить себе завтрак.
2. Наконец мне удалось найти дорогу.
3. Он настаивал на том, чтобы оплатить счет за обед.
4. Мы извинились за опоздание.
5. Я думаю о поездке в Америку этим летом.
6. Он был благодарен уже за то, что вы его слушали.
7. Она была занята работой над докладом.
8. Она настаивала, чтобы ей показали все.
9. Вы подозреваете, что я вам лгу?
10. Его обвинили в краже автомобиля.
11. Он работает без остановки целый день.
12. Ты ничего не добьешься, если будешь возражать.
13. Все это надо обсудить до того, как принимать решение.
14. Вы можете исправить фигуру, делая гимнастику.
15. Он даст ответ, посоветовавшись со своим юристом.
16. Он прошел мимо, не заметив нас.
17. Он упустил возможность поехать туда, потому что заболел.
18. Не делайте этого, не обдумав все, как следует.

**Exercise 24.** Translate the following into English using Gerunds after the verbs in brackets.
1. Я не виню тебя за то, что ты обманул нас. (to blame)
2. Тогда я заподозрил его в том, что он меня дразнит. (to suspect)
3. Нам было не трудно работать вместе. (to have no difficulty)
4. Он извинился, что не пришел вовремя. (to apologize)
5. Мне удалось заставить Энн говорить. (to succeed)
6. Она настояла на том, чтобы заплатить за такси. (to insist)
7. Дэн уговорил Беллу остаться на обед. (to talk into)
8. Доктор начал с того, что пощупал его пульс. (to begin)
9. Как ты объяснил покупку этого автомобиля? (to account)
10. Он упрекал себя за то, что не попытался поговорить с нею. (to reproach)

**Exercise 25. Translate the following into English.**
1. Я гордился тем, что работал с ним тогда. (proud)
2. Доктор привык выслушивать разных людей. (used)
3. Мне жаль, что причинил вам так много беспокойства. (sorry)
4. Я заинтересован в том, чтобы найти ее. (interested)
5. Я уверен, что ты вполне способен решить эту проблему (capable)
6. Мне надоело пытаться делать то, что мне не нравится. (tired)
7. Я удивился тому, что он женился. (surprised)
8. Я был немного разочарован тем, что не встретил Чарльза. (disappointed)
9. Она была благодарна ему за то, что он все понял. (grateful)
10. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок. (fond)
11. Он привык вставать в 7 утра.
12. Спасибо за то, что вы напомнили мне о собрании.
13. Я устал слушать его советы.
14. Нам удалось быстро найти их дом.
15. Нелли увлекается кроссвордами.
16. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы отдохнуть.
17. Не могли бы вы помочь, вместо того, чтобы давать советы?
18. Я не против подождать пару минут.
19. Она предложила сфотографироваться.
20. Он постоянно жалуется на головные боли.
21. Пол надо покрасить.
22. Мальчик заслуживает, чтобы его похвалили.
23. Я помню, что покупала эту книгу.
24. Я не помню, чтобы он сказал это.
25. Я помню, что опустила письмо в ящик.

**Exercise 26. Paraphrase the following using the construction with the Gerund.**

Обратите внимание на употребление герундийных конструкций:

There was little hope of my getting tickets for the train.
She was afraid of her son’s being operated on.
I insist on the documents being sent in time.

**Exercise 26. Paraphrase the following using the construction with the Gerund.**
1. She laughed to herself at the thought that they would look for her everywhere.
2. Ann insisted that we should have a substantial meal at a cafe.
3. We were not surprised that Jane had taken it too close to her heart.
4. I couldn't stand the idea that anybody should get in my way.
5. She said she had never dreamt that her husband would be elected President.
6. The girl was sure that her parents would reproach her.
7. The mother was proud that her son had been chosen to take part in the contest.
8. My mother would object if I had my hair cut.
9. The librarian wouldn't object if we kept the book one day longer.

**Exercise 27. Answer the questions.**
1. Do you like your friend's wearing her hair shoulder length? Do you object to her darkening her eyes and painting her lips?
2. Would you mind your boyfriend's wearing a beard or a moustache?
3. Are your parents pleased at your studying at our Institute? Are they sure of your passing your summer exams well? Are they afraid of your failing in English? Are they looking forward to your getting a grant? Is there any chance of your being given a grant this year?
4. Were you surprised at your friend's having got a "five" for his test-paper?
5. When you come late to classes you say something about your watch being slow, don't you?
6. When your group mate complains to you of her bad toothache, you insist on her going to the dentist's, don't you?
7. Do you appreciate having a good holiday after the year's work?

**Exercise 28. Complete the following using predicative constructions with the gerund.**

1. You don't seem to mind their...
2. What is the reason of his...
3. I don't understand what prevents her...
4. There's no sense in your...
5. She finished her...
6. He dropped the subject without my...
7. He liked the idea of their...
8. They saved time by Tom's...
9. There was no excuse for Isabel's...
10. I sat there listening to Arthur...
11. I don't like her...
12. He was right in his...
13. There is no point in my...
14. Forgive my...

**Exercise 29. Translate into English:**
1. Спасибо, что вы просмотрели за моим багажом.
2. Я могу похвастаться, что мой сын поступил в институт.
3. Я против того, чтобы сдавать наши вещи в багаж.
4. Он сожалел, что его друзья не попали на этот матч.
5. Я доволен, что наша команда сравняла счет.
6. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы ему дали возможность пересдать экзамен.
7. Я предлагаю, чтобы ты сходил в аптеку.
8. Все зависит от того, выиграют ли они этот матч.
9. Я была уверена, что он сдержит своё обещание.
10. Ты не возражаешь, если я буду с тобой откровенна?
11. По-моему, нет никакой необходимости рекламировать эти товары.
12. Я удивлена, что доктор не прописал тебе этого лекарства.
13. Мне не нравится, что он связался с этими людьми. Это плохая компания.

Герундий или инфинитив

Некоторые глаголы могут употребляться как с инфинитивом, так и с герундием.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. remember, forget</td>
<td>Do you remember seeing this man before?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remember to send the letter.</td>
<td>I will never forget seeing the Beatles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don't forget to put out all the lights before you leave.</td>
<td>(These verbs take a gerund when they refer to an action which occurred beforehand.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(They take an infinitive when they refer to an action which comes afterwards.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. regret</td>
<td>Do you regret not having gone to university?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I regret to tell you that your application has not been successful.</td>
<td>(the action refers to the past)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. like, love, hate, prefer</td>
<td>I don't like cooking that much. (= to enjoy, to take pleasure in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would you like to have a look round? (= to want, to wish)</td>
<td>Do you prefer typing letters to writing them by hand? (gerund is used in a comparison)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. mean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He means to get at the truth however long it can take. (= to intend)</td>
<td>I agree if the job won't mean moving to another area. (= to involve)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <strong>need, want, require</strong>&lt;br&gt;Do you want to discuss the matter?&lt;br&gt;We need to borrow some money to repair the roof.</td>
<td>The piano requires tuning.&lt;br&gt;The house needs painting.&lt;br&gt;(a passive action)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <strong>go on, keep on, carry on</strong>&lt;br&gt;After describing the project, he went on to give us its benefits. (= to introduce a new action)</td>
<td>They went on talking about their business. (= to continue an action)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <strong>stop, give up, end</strong>&lt;br&gt;He stopped to look at the map and then walked on. (= to interrupt one action in order to perform another)</td>
<td>Please, stop crying. (= to cease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <strong>advise, allow, encourage, recommend, permit</strong>&lt;br&gt;He doesn’t allow anyone to smoke in his office. (an object is used)&lt;br&gt;We are not allowed to smoke. (passive)</td>
<td>He doesn’t allow smoking in his office. (no object is used)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <strong>try</strong>&lt;br&gt;Try to climb in through the window. (an attempt)</td>
<td>Try ringing the doorbell. Someone may be in (an experiment)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 30.** Read these sentences. Pay attention to the difference in meaning of gerunds and infinities.

1. Remember to lend the book to him.
2. I don't remember lending this book to anyone.
3. Will you stop listening to the radio, please?
4. He stopped to say "good-bye" to us.
5. Your daughter likes swimming, doesn't she?
6. "Would you like to have a swim before lunch?" "Yes, I'd love to."  
7. "He hates getting up early." "So do I."
8. I'd hate to spend a night in the woods.
9. I'd like to feel independent.
10. Children like playing more than studying.
11. I meant to buy an evening paper but I didn't see anyone sell them.
12. "I want to catch the 7 a.m. train tomorrow." "But that means getting up at 6".
13. I regret being unable to help you.
14. I regret to tell you that I failed.
15. The librarian didn't allow (permit) us to talk here.
16. The librarian doesn't allow (permit) talking here.

**Exercise 31.** Open the brackets. Use either gerunds or infinitives.

**Student A:**

Did you remember to lock the car?

**Student B:**

I'm afraid, I didn't. I'd better go back and do it now.

1. "Let's go for a swim." "I'm not particularly good at (to swim). What about (to go) for a drive instead?"
2. "Do you feel like (to dine) out or would you rather (to have) dinner at home?" "I'd like (to go) out. I always enjoy (to have) dinner in a restaurant."
3. "I don't mind (to travel) by bus, but I hate (to stand) in queues." "I don't like (to queue) either, and you waste so much time waiting for buses. I think it's better (to go) by underground."
4. "Would you like (to come) to a lecture on Beethoven tonight?" "No, thanks. I like (to listen) to music but I don't like (to listen) to people talking about it."
5. "All right. When would you like (to start)?" "In a few minutes." "Let's wait till it stops (to rain); otherwise we'll get wet walking to the bus station."
6. "Do you remember (to meet) him at my house last year?" "Yes, certainly. I shall never forget (to meet) him. He's a wonderful man."

**Exercise 32.** Use infinitives or gerunds in the correct form:

1. What must you remember (do) before leaving home?
2. I regret (remind) him about his debt.
3. Don't tell me the secret. I prefer not (know) it.
4. Do you remember (take) to the art gallery for the first time?
5. He went on (say) something, but we couldn't hear him because of the noise.
6. "We expect the administration to take a decision", the speaker went on (say).
7. I can't tell her the truth. I'm afraid (upset) her.
8. The old lady forgot (put on) her glasses.
9. She hardly ever took a bus to the station, she preferred (walk).
10. Don't forget (take) your swimming suit.
11. The girl was afraid (come) near the dog, because she was afraid (bite).
12. I need (find) him urgently.
13. The parents regretted (allow) their daughter to stay out late.
14. He realized she would stand on her rights and stopped (argue).
15. Your hair is too long. It needs (cut).
16. They meant (be) on time but had to stop several times (ask) the way.
17. I try hard (master) spoken English but I find it difficult. - Try (watch) English video films and (listen) to tape stories.
18. It seemed so exciting to stay at the sea coast a few more days, but it would mean (return) by plane, and he hated (fly).
19. If you intend (catch) the bus it means (leave) now.
20. I remember my father (tell) me (respect) my friends’ opinion.
21. Remember (lock) the door for the night before (go) to bed.
22. She was afraid (say) a word, for she was afraid (wake) up the parents.

**TEST**

**TASK I.** Open the brackets:
1. He was still thirsty in spite of (have) two glasses of water.
2. She denies (see) her friends at the meeting yesterday.
3. The book is worth (read).
4. I want to thank you for (look after) my children.
5. Pam can't finish (paint) without (appreciate) by Granny.
6. The test requires (change).
7. The coat showed certain signs of (use) for a long time.
8. She did not reproach us for (come) late.
9. The boys insisted on (treat) politely at the lesson.
10. Anny hates (point out) to her mistakes by old people.
11. You deserve (praise).
12. I don't remember (take) to Moscow when I was three.
13. Don't show your disappointment at not (invite) to yesterday's party.
14. I always avoid (speculate about) my friends and (speculate about) by them.
15. Excuse him for (be rude).

**TASK II.** Insert the necessary prepositions:
1. What prevent you....?
2. Jane is upset....
3. We are looking forward....
4. What is the explanation....?
5. They charged him....
6. Don't blame her....
7. Who is responsible...?
8. Little Jack is good....
9. The children were bored....
10. Do you object...?
11. There is no chance....
12. I have succeeded....
13. Let me congratulate you....
14. She is not used....

**TASK III.** Translate:
1. Он не привык, чтобы с ним так обращались. 2. Мне было стыдно оттого, что я вышла из себя. 3. У вас плохая привычка курить в комнате. 4. Он не помнил, как его сбила машина. 5. Я против обсуждения таких вопросов на людях. 6. Она не будет упрекать вас за то, что вы опоздали. 7. Ольга отрицала, что отослала документы на два дня позже. 8. Не могу не восхищаться вашей эрудицией. 9. Давайте отложим обсуждение этого вопроса. 10. Его обвинили в краже ценных картин. 11. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы меня не посылали в командировку. 12. В чём причина вашего приезда? 13. Его нельзя убедить. 14. Петя хорошо читает. 15. Бесполезно ругать детей. Они не любят, когда к ним придираются. 16. Комнату нужно убрать и проветрить. 17. Конец романа нужно переделать. 18. Есть ли какой-либо шанс сдать экзамен? 19. Не стоит обращаться к нему сейчас. Он расстроен оттого, что ему приходится начинать всё заново.

C. The Participle

Study the forms and the functions of the participle in the English language. Ask questions, if any.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Voice</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-Perfect</td>
<td>Transitive</td>
<td>Intransitive</td>
<td>Transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Participle I)</td>
<td>(переходные)</td>
<td>(непереходные)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>writing</td>
<td>coming</td>
<td>being written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>come (для образования времен группы Perfect)</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Participle II)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>having written</td>
<td>having come</td>
<td>having been written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Perfect Participle)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ПРИМЕЧАНИЯ:

1. **Participle I Active** выражает действие как одновременное с действием, выраженным глаголом в личной форме, так и предшествующее ему:

   He stood **looking out** of the window.
   Он стоял и **смотрел** в окно (смотря в окно) (одновременное действие)

   **Arriving** at the hotel he went to his room.
   **Приехав** в гостиницу, он прошел в свой номер. (предшествующее действие)

2. **Perfect Participle** выражает действие, предшествующее действию, выраженному глаголом-сказуемым:

   **Having done** his homework he played a game of chess.
   **Выучив** уроки, он сыграл партию в шахматы.

*Exercise 1.* Comment on the tense and voice form of the participles. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Looking round she saw several pictures which were remarkably good.
2. Being run down and depressed, he went out to have a walk.
3. Being written by a famous writer, the book drew my attention.
4. Not having been signed by the director, the document was of no value.
5. Being written in a hurry the letter was illegible.
6. Being furnished in good taste the flat looked very elegant.

Функции причастия в предложении

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Функция в предложении</th>
<th>Пример</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Определение:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>перед существительным</td>
<td>The <em>sleeping</em> child was smiling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Спящий (спавший) ребенок улыбался.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She took away the <em>broken</em> cup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Она убрала <em>разбитую</em> чашку.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>после существительного</td>
<td>The actor <em>playing</em> the part of Hamlet is brilliant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Актер, играющий роль Гамлета, великолепен.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The delegation <em>headed</em> by the minister has already left.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Делегация, возглавляемая министром, уже уехала.
What do you think of the proposal being discussed at the meeting now?
Какого вы мнения о предложении, обсуждаемом сейчас на заседании?
He stressed the importance of the problems discussed.
Он подчеркнул важность обсуждаемых проблем.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Обстоятельство</th>
<th>Времени</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>While, when, as</td>
<td>Walking along the street he met an old friend of his. Когда он шел (идя) по улице, он встретил своего старого друга.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Having finished the translation he asked me to look it through. Когда он закончил (закончил) перевод, он попросил меня его просмотреть.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>While travelling he visited Italy. Путешествуя, он посетил Италию</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not knowing what to do the boy decided to wait. Так как мальчик не знал (не зная), что делать, он решил подождать.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Being very tired he went to bed. Так как он очень устал (будучи очень усталым), он лег спать.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He went out of the room laughing. Смеясь, он вышел из комнаты.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 2.** Put ‘why’-questions to the following statements. Let your fellow-students respond to them.

Model: For a moment they stood smiling at each other.

Student A: - Why did they stand smiling at each other?

Student B: - They stood smiling at each other because they were glad to see each other.

1. When listening to her I had an impression that something worried her.
2. In half an hour my friend, looking at his watch, announced that he must go.
3. Taking her handkerchief she hid her face in it.
4. Jim went out slamming the door.
5. "Why did you invite Bill?" Ann asked, reddening.
6. The boy clenched his hands, trying to pull himself together.
7. He looked at me smiling nervously.
8. He stood quite still for a moment peering around.
9. The boy rushed to his mother crying bitterly.
10. They walked slowly enjoying the quiet evening.

**Exercise 3.** Complete the sentences using participial constructions from the list below.

1. I remained in the garden...
2. She came into the kitchen...
3. He shook my hand...
4. Suddenly she rose and went to the front door...
5. He held out his hand...
6. I could not help laughing...
7. He left the room...
8. He laughed merrily...
9. He got up...
10. He grasped her hand...

smiling happily; enjoying the wonderful day; having nothing more to say; putting on her apron; while reading the story; turning to his sister; fancying that she heard a knock; feeling that the interview was over; advancing towards me; shutting the door behind him

**Exercise 4.** Complete the sentences. Make use of the phrases in brackets.

1. She expected her sister to be grateful. (to sacrifice everything for her sake)
2. The mother tried to soothe the child. (to kiss and take him in her arms)
3. Geese and turkeys were putting on weight quickly. (to feed well)
4. Her brother’s family also arrived. (to inform about the wedding)
5. She was quite breathless. (to run up two flights of stairs)
6. He saw the Westminster Palace on his left. (to turn round)
7. The man can’t control his temper. (to make fun of him)
8. They know each other quite well. (to be at school together)
9. They recollected their days at the college. (to talk over a cup of tea)
10. He found the text he needed. (to turn over three or four pages)

**Exercise 5.** Transform these sentences according to the models.

a) The girl who is talking to Mr. Brown is our guide.
The girl talking to Mr. Brown is our guide.
1. The young man who is standing at the window is their new teacher.
2. The figure skaters who are dancing now won the first prize last year.
3. His book of poems that they published last year is very popular.
4. The treaty that was concluded last month is of great importance.
5. The girl who is greeting us is my elder sister

b) After he had done his homework he went for a walk.
Having done his homework, he went for a walk.
1. After he had returned from abroad he continued his University studies.
2. After she had failed to win the first prize in the championship she wept.
3. After he had completed the work he left for a holiday.
4. After she had won the gold medal a third time she decided to give up skiing.
5. After he had bought a present he took a taxi and went to the railway station.

c) When they arrived at the airport they saw their friends.
Arriving at the airport they saw their friends.
1. When she was going downstairs she saw Peter in the hall.
2. When she opened the door she saw a stranger.
3. When she closed the door she went upstairs.
4. When he was asked what he thought of the film he said he liked it.
5. When we listened to him we burst out laughing.

d) As Mary was very tired she didn't help her brother with his homework.
Being very tired Mary didn't help her brother with his homework.
1. As he felt hot and feverish he decided to take his temperature.
2. She smiled as she remembered the story.
3. As he didn't know what to do he decided to phone his father.
4. As he was informed about the accident he arrived at the place immediately.
5. As he looked out of the window he saw a crowd of people.

Exercise 6. Translate what is given in brackets using Participle I. Pay attention to the form of Participle I.

1. She came into the kitchen, (вытирая руки передником).
2. I went out into the garden and remained there, (наблюдая за бурей).
3. Lucy and Rose entered the train together, (улыбаясь друг другу).
4. (Увидев, что я не пью чай) she brought a cup of coffee.
6. Snow was falling now in soft, large flakes, (покрывая красные крыши).
7. I looked at the girl who was sitting at the window, (читая книгу).
9. (Вернувшись в свой номер) I opened a book and began reading it.
10. Henry, (услышав шум), came into the room.
Exercise 7. Paraphrase the following.

Student A: As the meat was well cooked it tasted delicious.
Student B: Being industrious, the girl got a good mark.

1. As the meat was well cooked it tasted delicious.
2. As the man had drunk a lot of wine he couldn’t drive.
3. When he went down the stairs he was humming a tune softly.
4. The man was ruined because he had stuck to cards.
5. As I realized that he was a dishonest person, I decided to break off with him.
6. When I filled in the form I handed it over to the cashier.
7. As she was promised presents for Christmas she was looking forward to it.
8. As she was bored to death by his company she found an excuse and left.
9. As the boys were allowed to watch the match they didn't go to bed in time.
10. As they were paid in advance they had the money for the railway fare.

Exercise 8. Change the following using either Participle I or an attributive clause.

1. The tapestry was hanging on the wall. It attracted everybody’s attention.
2. The woman who’s standing at the notice board works at the Dean’s office.
3. The drawings that have won the first places will be sent to the exhibition.
4. What’s the name of the teacher who told us about her trip to London last week?
5. Look at the boy who's making a snowman. How rosy his cheeks are!
6. The woman over there who's wearing a silk head square is my aunt.
7. The car that was standing at the gate was won in the lottery.

Exercise 9. Complete the sentences using Participle I and an attributive clause:

Do you know the girl smiling at us?
Do you know the girl…?
1. (to run ahead of the others)
2. (to win the first prize at the competition in track and field)
3. (to play the part of Ofelia in yesterday’s performance)
4. (to sit in the second row behind Pete)
5. (to leave us a message at the dean’s office)
6. (to smile at you cheerfully)
7. (to speak in favour of your suggestion)

**Exercise 10.** Translate into English:
1. Я благодарна врачам, спасшим жизнь моего ребенка.
2. Студенты, читающие много английских книг, знают язык очень хорошо.
3. Что можно сказать о человеке, не сдержавшем своего слова?
4. Студенты, выступавшие вчера на собрании, говорили об учебе.
5. Он упал, никем не замеченный.
6. Я попросил незнакомца, сидевшего рядом со мной, помочь мне.
7. Я спросил у человека, читавшего газету, который час.
8. Книги, взятые в библиотеке, нужно возвратить через неделю.
9. Велосипеды, выпускаемые этим заводом, пользуются большим спросом.
10. Книги, напечатанные в прошлом месяце, уже поступили в продажу.
11. Упакованные вещи стояли в коридоре.

**Exercise 11.** Paraphrase the following sentences using the Participle where possible.

**Student A:**
1. As he was a great book lover, he spent a lot of money on books.
2. The answer I got from my friend worried me greatly.
3. As I thought it would rain, I took my raincoat with me.
4. I heard that he was coming up the stairs slowly.
5. As Petrov was very much excited he didn't hear the teacher's questions.
6. When I arrived at the station I found out that I had left my ticket at home.
7. As she was pretty sensible she was able to come to a compromise.

**Student B:**
1. While we discussed the book, we touched upon many interesting problems.
2. While discussing the book, we touched upon many interesting problems.

**Exercise 12.** Make up sentences using the following constructions with Participle I in the function of an adverbial modifier.
Participle I глагола to be обычно опускается:

While in London he attended a language course.

Exercise 13. Paraphrase:
Student A: While they were travelling in Europe they visited France and Italy.
Student B: While travelling in Europe they visited France and Italy.

1. When he was running he fell down and injured his leg.
2. While the hockey player was sitting in the penalty box he watched the game.
3. When Helen was a student she lived in a hostel.
4. While they were at the theatre, they were talking about art.
5. While the doctor was examining the girl he saw that she was feverish.
6. While they were discussing the problem they tried to find a settlement.
7. When he was a child he was fond of playing football.

Exercise 14. Respond to the following.
1. Where did you find this photo? (to look through one's old letters)
2. Where did you buy this wonderful booklet? (to roam about the museum)
3. How did you get to know him? (to play football for our Institute team)
4. Where did you find this mushroom? (to walk in the wood)
5. How did she manage to pass the exam? (to be very industrious and clever)

Exercise 15. Complete the sentences. Supply a natural conversational context.
1. Hearing her steps...
2. Waiting for the others to come...
3. When a boy, he...
4. Seeing me...
5. Having lost my umbrella...
6. Being a lover of nature....
7. When exploring London...
8. Pretending not to recognize me...
9. Being in charge of the children...
10. When examining the patient...
11. While listening to the lecturer...
12. Being pressed for time...
13. Arriving at the airport...
14. When reading the book...

Exercise 16. Translate into English:
1. Он хорошо знал английский, т. к. прожил в Англии десять лет.
2. Он посещал все концерты, будучи любителем классической музыки.
3. Будучи в Лондоне, они осмотрели достопримечательности города.
4. Будучи застенчивым, он не вымолвил ни слова в течение всего вечера.
5. Не зная, какую шляпу выбрать, она обратилась к продавщице за советом.
6. Хорошо зная его, я не могла доверить ему это ответственное дело.
7. Переселившись на новую квартиру, они устроили новоселье.
8. Подогрев обед в микроволновой печи, они сели за стол.
9. Потратив все деньги на мелочи, ей пришлось занимать еще денег.

Exercise 17. Change the following sentences using Participle I or II where possible:
1. After she had sent the children to a resort, she relaxed a bit.
2. When the tourists were in Scotland, they were struck by its beauty.
3. The forests which give a good supply of timber are of great value.
4. The trees which are being planted now, have been brought from other countries.
5. The boys who arrived at the lake yesterday are putting up tents now.
6. We were struck by the climate contrasts of the country.
7. Though the valley was not lit by the sun it looked astonishing.
8. As we had been shown the way to the cliffs, we were the first to start off.
9. He leaned against the fence and looked at the trees.
10. They stopped as they didn't know what path to choose.

Exercise 18. Replace the infinitives in the brackets by Participle I or II:

1. After she had sent the children to a resort, she relaxed a bit.
2. When the tourists were in Scotland, they were struck by its beauty.
3. The forests which give a good supply of timber are of great value.
4. The trees which are being planted now, have been brought from other countries.
1. When (to ask) to show the countries (to situate) on the British Isles, he did it.
2. (to be) only 22 miles from France, the cliffs of Britain are often seen in France.
3. (to come) to the coast, they understood how picturesque the scenery was.
4. The port (to build) on the river some years ago is used for small vessels.
5. The canal (to build) now will be used for ships.
6. (to be) away so many years, he was happy to be coming back.
7. (to sleep) two hours, I felt refreshed and rested.
8. (to complete) all our preparations, we started off early in the morning.
9. He wanted his house (to value) at £800.
10. For hours he used to watch the sheep (to wander) on the hills.

Exercise 19. Translate into English.
1. Успешно сдав все экзамены, студенты решили работать летом гидами.
2. Войдя в класс, учительница увидела десятки глаз, глядящих на нее.
3. Играя в шахматы, он обычно посмеивался над своими партнерами.
4. Уложив чемоданы и захватив собаку, они отправились вниз по Темзе.
5. Прочитав несколько страниц, девочка отложила книгу.
6. Проходя мимо этого дома вчера, я слышала, как кто-то прекрасно пел.
7. Подходя к дому, мать увидела, что дети ждут ее, стоя у калитки.
8. Услышав чьи-то шаги и голоса, мы спрятались за деревом.
9. Проходя мимо, я увидел свет в окне и решил заглянуть к вам.

Participle I как часть «сложного дополнения»

Participle I в этой конструкции употребляется после глаголов to see, to watch, to hear, to feel, to observe, to notice, to find, to catch, etc.

I heard him singing in the hall.
Я слышал, как он noem в зале.
We found the boy playing the guitar.
Мы обнаружили, что мальчик играет на гитаре.

**Exercise 20.** Paraphrase the following using objective predicative constructions with Participle I.

**Student A:**

1. She was watching him (he, not to see).
2. Someone was shouting (I, to hear).
3. The water was sucking at the piles beneath the house (they, to hear).
4. My cheeks were going red (I, to feel).
5. His ears were glowing (he, to feel).
6. The gardeners were watering beds of young lettuce (he, to watch).
7. My sister was signaling to me from another table (I, to see).
8. His father was moving around in the living room (he, to hear).
9. He was waiting about five minutes (they, to keep).
10. They were sitting in the sunshine (she, to find).

**Student B:**

1. The children were running towards the forest.
2. She saw the children running towards the forest.

**Exercise 21.** Complete the following so as to use objective predicative constructions with Participle I.

1. They watched the children....
2. He didn't see her....
3. I didn't notice you....
4. I've never heard you....
5. I didn't see anybody....
6. The girl saw someone....
7. The blow sent the boy....
8. She watched the car....
9. She heard the footsteps....
10. I saw the door....
11. She heard the children....
12. He felt her....

**Exercise 22.** Recast the following sentences so as to use objective predicative constructions with Participle I.

Make the sentences passive.

**Student A:**

I saw that the fire was still burning.

**Student B:**

I saw the fire burning.
1. I saw that a small crowd was collecting, attracted by the fire.
2. I felt that they were doing something useful.
3. He saw that Martha was cutting the plum cake that she had made.
4. When I opened my eyes I saw the others were still sleeping.
5. I noticed that Jane was sitting close to Freddy.
6. I could see that Dave was still standing in the door-way.
7. He saw that Arthur was looking at the boat.
8. He could see that a man was standing on the pavement, facing the doors.
9. When he opened the window he heard how the birds were singing in the garden.
10. I could feel that the room was rocking under my feet.

**Exercise 23.** Choose the correct form (Infinitive without *to* or –*ing* form) of the verbs:
1. Have you ever heard Mary…? She has got a very good voice. (sing)
2. Did you see him…off the ladder? It was terrible! (jump)
3. Did you glimpse John’s car…past me? (race)
4. Did you really see a boy…flowers in your garden? (pick)
5. Do you think that the boss notice you…the office early last night? (leave)

Exercise 24. Open the brackets using the Infinitive or Participle I.

1. She could almost hear his mind (work).
2. When they saw me (come), they stood up.
3. I failed to see the guests (leave).
4. I looked out of the window and saw the rain (pour) down on the garden.
5. They heard a key (turn) in a lock.
7. After an hour's rest I felt the tensions of the workday (disappear).
8. She glanced back and saw the stranger (follow) her slowly.
9. I saw the cup (slip) from her hand and (fall) to the floor.
10. Helen found her friends (have) a surprise party.

Exercise 25. Translate into Russian:

a) Я видел, как они подходили к дому.
   Я видел, как они подошли к дому.
b) Мы видели, как вы переходили улицу.
   Мы видели, как вы перешли улицу.
c) Она видела, как я открывал окно.
   Она видела, как я открыл окно.
d) Я слышал, как она рассказывала ему об этом.
   Я слышал, как она сказала ему об этом.
e) Я видел, как он выходил из комнаты.
   Я видел, как она погасила свет и вышла из комнаты.

Exercise 26. Point out the Complex Objects with the Participle II. Translate the sentences into Russian:
1. He had his luggage sent to the station.
2. How often do you have your carpets cleaned?
3. Have you got your watch repaired?
4. We decided to have our photos taken after the final exam.
5. Get the rooms dusted and aired by the time they arrive.
6. I haven't had my nails polished yet.
7. I'm having a new dress made.
8. He thought it necessary to have the ceiling of the room whitewashed.
9. They found the door locked.
10. He heard his name called from behind.

**Exercise 27.** Recast the following sentences so as to use predicative constructions instead of subordinate clauses.

**Student A:**
1. I found that the door was unlocked.
2. They considered that the plan had been lost.
3. It seemed that she was greatly worried.
4. It appeared that Leila was calmed and delighted.
5. It turned out that the letter had been signed.
6. We found that the letter had been burnt.

**Student B:**

**Exercise 28.** Make up 2 or 3 questions using the following constructions with Participle II. Let your fellow-students answer your questions.

**Student A:**
When did you have your ceiling whitewashed?

**Student B:**
I had it whitewashed a week ago.
1. to have one's hair cut; 6. to have one's shoes mended;
2. to have one's picture taken; 7. to have a new dress made;
3. to have one's TV repaired; 8. to have one's nails done;
4. to have one's room papered; 9. to have one's report typed;
5. to have one's hair waved; 10. to have one's mail sent;

**Exercise 29.** Read the following dialogue and point out predicative constructions with Participle II. Make up your own dialogues using predicative constructions with Participle II.

*Nora:* It's Peter's birthday the day after tomorrow. I've had a new suit made for him to wear at his party.

*Harry:* Are we going to have a lot of his friends here?

*Nora:* Oh, yes, didn't I tell you?

*Harry:* Are you going to cook all the cakes yourself?

*Nora:* Some of them. And the rest I shall have done by a shop. Oh, I must get the carpets beaten before the party.

*Robert:* And Dad, will you have the tape-recorder mended by Friday?

*Harry:* Well, why don't you have it mended yourself, Robert? Didn't you have it mended last time it broke?

*Nora:* What do you want the tape-recorder for on Friday?

*Robert:* We shall have to use it for the dancing.

*Harry:* What, dancing half the night? Then I see what I shall have to do!

*Nora:* What's that, Harry?

*Harry:* I must have a bed made up for me at the club, and spend the night there.

**Exercise 30.** Answer the following questions:

**Student A:**

1. How often do you have your hair cut?

2. When did you last have your hair died?

**Student B:**

When did you have your teeth filled?

I had my teeth filled last month.
3. Where did he have his watch repaired?
4. How often do you have your teeth examined?
5. Where does she have her clothes made?
6. When will they have this job done?
7. When did he have his suit cleaned?
8. Where can I have my coat shortened?

**Exercise 31.** Paraphrase the following sentences according to the model, watch the difference in meaning:

**Student A:**

1. She wants to shorten her dress.
2. He wants his dinner to be served at 5.
3. They’ll discuss the problem at the meeting.
4. When does he want to send the telegram?
5. We want to finish the work by Monday.
6. I want to do my hair in another style.
7. My hair has grown long. Will you to cut it?
8. He has a terrible toothache. He wants the doctor to pull out his tooth.
9. My watch is 5 minutes slow. Who can repair it?
10. His suit is already dirty. It needs cleaning.

**Student B:**

1. I’ll make somebody do this job
2. I’ll have this job done.

---

Read about the Absolute Nominative Construction.
Ask questions, if any.
Абсолютная номинативная конструкция

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Состав конструкции</th>
<th>Пример</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. существительное, местоимение it, this, there + причастие | The weather being fine, they went for a walk. 
**Так как погода была хорошая**, они пошли гулять. 
This being so, he’ll have to look for a new job. 
**Поскольку дело обстоит таким образом**, ему придется искать другую работу. 
It being late, they decided to stay at home. 
**Так как было поздно**, они решили остаться дома. 
There being little time left, they had to hurry. 
**Поскольку оставалось мало времени**, им нужно было спешить. |
| 2. with, without + существительное | The talks will continue, with the American proposals unchanged. 
Переговоры продолжатся, **хотя американские предложения не изменились**. 
The representatives came from ten countries, with Britain being represented by Professor Brown. 
Представители приехали из десяти стран, **причем Британию представлял профессор Браун**. |
| 3. существительное + а) существительное с предлогом | The old man sat in an armchair, a cigarette between his lips. 
Старик сидел в кресле **и курил (с сигаретой во рту)**. 
The boy came into the room, his face very dirty. 
Мальчик вошел в комнату, **лицо у него было очень грязное**. |
| в) прилагательное и др. | |

Примечание:
1. Nominative Absolute Construction всегда отделяется запятой.
2. Nominative Absolute Construction переводится на русский язык либо придаточными предложениями времени, причины, сопутствующих обстоятельств, вводимыми наречиями причем, в то время как, союзом так как и др., либо сочинительными предложениями, вводимыми союзами а, но, и. 
**Exercise 32.** Read these sentences and translate them into Russian. Note the use of the Nominative Absolute Construction.

1. It being Saturday, he found no one in the office.
2. There being a lot of people in the bus, they decided to wait for another one.
3. Tea ready, I asked everyone to sit at the table.
4. He stood aside, with his hand on the door.
5. With the talks proceeding in a calm atmosphere, an agreement may be signed.
6. With the situation changed, the government was forced to change its policy.
7. Mutual understanding achieved, the heads of delegation signed the agreement.

**Exercise 33.** Make up sentences using the following nominative absolute participial constructions.

1. ...the weather being fine.
2. It being a cold day....
3. ...his voice trembling.
4. The working day being over....
5. ...his eyes widening.
6. ...his cheeks reddening.
7. ...her face lightening.
8. My friend having declared....
9. ...his hand reaching for a cigarette.
10. The hour being early....
11. The child weeping bitterly...
12. The door bell ringing....

**Exercise 34.** Translate into English, using Absolute Constructions.

1. Так как было очень тепло, дети спали на открытом воздухе.
2. Когда все приготовления были закончены, мы отправились в поход.
3. Корабль медленно плыл вдоль берега; птицы кружились над ним.
4. Было очень темно, так как на небе не было ни одной звездочки.
5. Когда солнце село, туристы развели костер.
6. Так как Петр отсутствовал, Александру пришлось сделать его работу.
7. Так как было холодно, они развели костер.
8. После того как / Так как все было улажено, он пошел домой.
9. Так как луна светила ярко, все было ясно видно.
10. Так как наш бензин был израсходован, мы не могли ехать дальше.

**TEST**

**TASK I.** Replace the attributive clauses by Participle I where possible:
1. We went past the workers who were repairing the bridge.
2. He thought of the girl, who had shouted at him in the street.
3. Ted looked through the window, which faced the garden.
4. The man, who spoke to Polly a minute ago, is a painter.
5. The people, who are waiting in the hall, have been sitting here for a long time.
6. Stephen, who listened to the speech, inserted no ward.
7. I have got my lunch which was waiting for me.
8. We crossed the road which led to the church.

**TASK II.** Use the Infinitive or Participle I of the verb in brackets:
1. He watched Lucy (cross) the room and (open) the window.
2. I heard her (sing), when I came in.
3. Old Smith caught the beggar (pick up) flowers in his garden.
4. Nobody has ever heard her (sing) the whole romance.
5. Through the window Calvin could be seen (sit) on the sofa and (read)
6. This story made us (laugh).

**TASK III.** Translate using participles and participial constructions:
1. Утомлённый долгой дорогой, он быстро уснул.
2. Он мог долго сидеть, закрыв глаза и не двигаясь.
3. Он заметил, как Мэри вошла в магазин.
4. Вы не подскажите, куда ушла девушка, стоявшая здесь минуту назад?
5. Поскольку вечер закончился, мы поспешили уйти.
6. Он вошёл в комнату с сигаретой в руках.
7. Она посмотрела на увядшие цветы.
8. Он понял свою ошибку и перестал спорить.
9. Я переделала пальто.
10. Судя по её внешности, она настоящая леди.
Unit 13. Prepositions

A. The Structure of Prepositions
B. Prepositions of Time
C. Prepositions of Place
D. Prepositions of Direction
E. Prepositions of Spatial Relationship

В современном английском языке предлоги являются средством выражения отношений существительного, местоимения, числительного либо ге-рундия к другим словам в предложении.

A. The Structure of Prepositions

По своей структуре предлоги делятся на:

Простые
предлоги - это предлоги, неразложимые на составные части: in, on, at, by, to, with, of, from и т.д

Сложные
предлоги - это те предлоги, которые образовались путём слово-сложения: inside, outside, upon, into и т.д

Составные
предлоги - это предлоги, состоящие из нескольких слов: according to, because of, by means of, in addition to, in case of, on account of и т.д.

Производные, имеющие в своем составе суффиксы и префиксы: across, below, along и т.д.

Study the following compound prepositions and their meaning. Ask questions, if any.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositional Phrase</th>
<th>Equivalent in English</th>
<th>Translation in Russian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>According to</td>
<td>согласно</td>
<td>According to его слова Mike is a gifted artist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As to (as for)</td>
<td>что касается</td>
<td>As for your lexical test, I am really pleased with the results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because of</td>
<td>из-за</td>
<td>She didn’t accept the invitation because of her splitting headache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by means of</td>
<td>посредством</td>
<td>She found a lot of friends by means of the Internet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>due to</td>
<td>благодаря, в силу, из-за</td>
<td>Due to his hard work Peter entered the university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the sake of</td>
<td>ради</td>
<td>Every year the Browns go to the Crimea for the sake of their kids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in case of</td>
<td>в случае</td>
<td>In case of robbery ring up 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in connection with</td>
<td>в связи с</td>
<td>Take my warmest congratulations in connection with your birthday party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of, despite</td>
<td>несмотря на</td>
<td>In spite of rainy weather they went for a walk. Despite piercing pain in her ankle she went to the ball.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>вместо</td>
<td>She bought apples instead of oranges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on account of</td>
<td>по причине, из-за</td>
<td>On account of her illness she had to miss the conference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanks to</td>
<td>благодаря</td>
<td>Thanks to her patience he recovered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 1.** Complete the following prepositional phrases by choosing a word from the list below.

When you have finished, try to make up a sentence using each of the phrases.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a cost,</th>
<th>the influence</th>
<th>agreement,</th>
<th>the benefit,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>answer,</td>
<td>the compliments,</td>
<td>behalf,</td>
<td>good terms,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reference,</td>
<td>means,</td>
<td>peace,</td>
<td>pity,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. at a cost of
2. at __________ with
3. by __________ of
4. for __________ of
5. in __________ with
6. in __________ to
7. on __________ of
8. on __________ with
9. out of __________ for
10. under __________ of
11. with __________ to
12. with __________ of

**Exercise 2.** Complete the following prepositional phrases by choosing a word from the list below.

Don’t forget to memorize the unfamiliar prepositional phrases!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>account,</th>
<th>addition,</th>
<th>common,</th>
<th>exchange,</th>
<th>favour,</th>
<th>odds,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regard,</td>
<td>respect,</td>
<td>the exception,</td>
<td>the expense,</td>
<td>the sake,</td>
<td>virtue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. in __________ for
2. in __________ with
3. in __________ to
4. in __________ of
5. at __________ with
6. at __________ of
7. with __________ to
8. with __________ of
9. for __________ of
10. out of __________ for
11. on __________ of
12. by __________ of
B. Prepositions of Time:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at</th>
<th>at five o’clock, at dawn, at noon, at lunch, at night, at the weekend, at Christmas, at Easter</th>
<th>в пять часов, на рассвете, в полдень, во время ланча, ночью, на выходные, на Рождество, на Пасху</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>in June, in 2007, in the evening, in spring, in nineties, in a minute</td>
<td>в июне, в 2007, вечером, весной, в 90-е, через минуту</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>on weekdays, on Christmas Day, on Wednesday, on Tuesday evening, on May 10, on a sunny day</td>
<td>в будние дни, в день рождества, в среду, во вторник вечером, десятого мая, в солнечный день</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>by the end of the year, by 5 p.m., by September</td>
<td>к концу года, к пяти часам вечера, к сентябрю</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during</td>
<td>during the party, during his spring recess</td>
<td>Во время вечеринки, во время его весенних каникул</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>for three days, for a couple of weeks</td>
<td>в течение трех дней, в течение нескольких недель</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>after lunch</td>
<td>после ланча</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from...till</td>
<td>from dusk to dawn, from 6 till 8, from May till July</td>
<td>от заката до рассвета, с 6 до 8, с мая по июль</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>since evening, since then</td>
<td>с вечера, с тех пор</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>within</td>
<td>within an hour, within a month</td>
<td>в течение часа, в течение месяца</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 1. Insert the necessary prepositions of time:

1. I left work ______ ten o’clock last night.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

2. I saw Bob in the street ______ yesterday.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)
3. I didn't get time to come and visit you ______ last Tuesday.
   a) at
   b) on
   c) in
   d) (no preposition)
4. He used to be a regular visitor ______ Tuesdays.
   a) at
   b) on
   c) in
   d) (no preposition)
5. I phoned her up and spoke to her ______ Wednesday morning.
   a) at
   b) on
   c) in
   d) (no preposition)
6. I last saw him ______ the beginning of September.
   a) at
   b) on
   c) in
   d) (no preposition)
7. I saw him sometime ______ June.
   a) at
   b) on
   c) in
   d) (no preposition)
8. Were you at the last meeting ______ July 13?
   a) at
   b) on
   c) in
   d) (no preposition)
9. We bought the company ______ Thursday, 22 May.
   a) at
   b) on
   c) in
   d) (no preposition)
10. I spoke to her ______ three weeks ago.
    a) at
11. I bought this computer ______ the start of the summer.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

12. I bought this computer ______ the summer.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

13. I bought this computer ______ last summer.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

14. This style was very popular ______ the 1970's.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

15. They were very popular ______ the middle of the 19th Century.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

16. I was still at school ______ 1993.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

17. I met him ______ January of last year.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)
18. I knew John Brown quite well ______ when I was at university.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

19. I took over this job ______ the middle of last year.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

20. I was in a meeting ______ all day yesterday.
   a) at  
   b) on  
   c) in  
   d) (no preposition)

**JOKE TIME**

✓ Patient: Doctor! Doctor! I think I’m a dog.
✓ Doctor: Sit down, please.
✓ Patient: I can’t. I’m not allowed on the furniture.

**Exercise 2.** Complete the following sentences with the prepositions in, on, at:

1. I'm going there ____ Monday.
2. The meeting’s ____ the third of June.
3. The course starts ____ the autumn.
4. I'm going away ____ Easter.
5. She was born ____ 2002.
6. It happened ____ Wednesday.
7. It was popular ____ the 1990s.
8. I'm going skiing ____ Christmas.
9. ____ the weekend.
10. I’ll call you back ____ a minute.

**Exercise 3.** Complete the following sentences with during, for, while:

1. She's going to study abroad ____ the summer.
2. Something funny happened _____ the lecture.
3. It happened _____ I was away.
4. Do it _____ you can.
5. _____ I was coming here it was starting to rain.
6. He's been working _____ three weeks.
7. I fell asleep _____ the film.
8. Did you see Tom _____ your vacation?
9. We talked _____ an hour.
10. _____ our stay in London, we visited a lot of museums.
11. What did you do _____ you were in London?
12. I think I need to study French _____ a few months before I go there.
13. I broke my arm _____ I was playing squash.
14. He broke into tears _____ the film.
15. Could you hold on _____ a few moments?

**Exercise 3.** Insert the necessary prepositions of time:

1. Jane is arriving ____ January 26 ____ 2 o'clock ____ the afternoon.
2. It snows here every year ____ December. We always go outside and play in the snow ____ Christmas day.
3. Michael is leaving ____ Friday ____ noon.
5. Franklin began working on the project ____ yesterday.
6. Normally, ____ New Year's Eve, it's tradition to kiss the one you love ____ midnight.
7. Don't be ridiculous; there were no telephones ____ the seventeenth century! The telephone was invented ____ the 1870s.
8. The plane leaves ____ tomorrow morning ____ 8:00 a.m.
9. The hills here are covered with wildflowers ____ early spring.
10. We met at the restaurant ____ 6:30 and stayed ____ 10:30.

**Exercise 4.** Insert the prepositions of time:

My birthday’s...... May
a) in b) on c) at
She’ll be away ...... next week
a) since b) at c) until
The exam is ...... the tenth of December
a) in b) on c) at
I always have dinner with my family... Christmas Day
a) in  b) at  c) on
In Spain, they give each other presents... Christmas Eve
a) in  b) on  c) at
The lecture finished... five thirty
a) at  b) on  c) in
I hate it when people telephone... I'm having dinner
a) during  b) while  c) for
I like to go to a party... New Year's Eve
a) in  b) on  c) at
The term is from September... December
a) to  b) for  c) at
He hasn't worked... he lost his job
a) since  b) for  c) by
The car won't be ready... Friday
a) until  b) in  c) since
You must see Paris... the Spring
a) in  b) on  c) at
He doesn't start work until late... the afternoon
a) on  b) in  c) at
Snow generally falls... February
a) in  b) on  c) at
People give chocolate eggs as presents... Easter
a) on  b) in  c) at
Did I miss anything... I was on the phone?
a) while  b) during  c) for
I have lessons... Mondays and Wednesdays
a) in  b) on  c) at
He didn't do the work... his boss got angry
a) since  b) for  c) until
She was off work... a fortnight
a) for  b) at  c) in
Nobody spoke... the film
a) during  b) since  c) on
It's always colder... November than September
a) on  b) in  c) at
Their first child was born... the spring
a) on  b) at  c) in
I've known him... a long time
a) since  b) for  c) at
I'll see you... ten o'clock
a) at  b) on  c) in
She was born... 1985
a) at  b) in  c) on
C. Prepositions of Place
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2) <strong>at</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>у</strong>, около, на (указывает на нахождение предмета вблизи другого предмета); The car is at the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- <strong>в</strong>, на (указывает на участие в каком-либо действии или процессе): She is at the meeting now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom is waiting for his sister <strong>at</strong> the bank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sue spent the whole afternoon <strong>at</strong> the market.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2) <strong>on</strong> – обозначает на поверхности</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is a new roof <strong>on</strong> the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three players are practicing <strong>on</strong> the field. (поверхность)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The frost made patterns <strong>on</strong> the window.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3) *in*  – обозначает в (внутри чего-либо)

The house is in the county.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image 341x683 to 469x782</th>
<th>Image 431x212 to 521x355</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There are five rooms in the house, which has a lovely fireplace in the living room.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A face appeared in the window.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Several common uses of *in* and *on* occur with *street*. The first two follow the general pattern of *in* and *on* usage. The third is an idiom that must be learned as a unit.
a) The children are playing in the street.

b) Our house is on Third Street.

c) He declared bankruptcy last week, and now he's out on the street. (This is an idiom meaning that he's poor.)

Exercise 1. Insert the necessary prepositions of place:

1. I live _______ Australia.
   - on  - at  - in  - by

2. The bank is _______ the supermarket.
   - next  - beside  - to  - side  - next to

3. The file is _______ the table.
   - under  - down  - bottom

4. There is a restaurant _______ the Empire State Building.
   - top  - on the top of  - above  - over

5. The bridge goes _______ the river.
   - above  - over  - through  - across

6. There's a good film _______ the screens.
   - by  - with  - to  - on

7. Paris is _______ France.
   - in  - to  - by  - at
8. Versailles is ______ Paris.
   ○ next ○ by ○ near ○ at

Exercise 2. Write the correct prepositions of place:

1. I met Christine..... university.
2. Don't believe everything you read ..... newspapers.
3. Christian isn't here. He's ..... work.
4. Kurt's office is..... the second floor.
5. There were a lot of people..... the party.
6. Frank met Maria..... the way to work.
7. Susanne is..... a meeting.
8. I had a meal..... the train.
9. My children are..... home.
10. This is the best cake..... the world!

JOKE TIME
Man: What’s the best way to remove paint from a chair?
Shopkeeper: Sit down on it before it’s dry.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions:

Student A: Student B:

1. a) on  
   b) in  
   c) at  
   d) of

   We can't make spaghetti without garlic. Where is the garlic?
   We can't make spaghetti without garlic. Where is the garlic?

   It's on the table.

2. a) in  
   b) next to  
   c) next  
   d) into

   Karin: I don't see it. I only see tomatoes.
   Karl: It's ______ the tomatoes.

   Karl: It's ______ the tomatoes.

3. a) under

   Karin: It's not here.
   Karl: Oh, look ____ the refrigerator.

   Karin: It's not here.
   Karl: Oh, look ____ the refrigerator.
b) at

c) into

d) in

4 Karin: I don’t see any garlic.
Karl: Look ______ the beer.
   a) at
   b) behind
   c) in
   d) through

5 Karin: It's not there.
Karl: Look on the floor. Maybe it's ______ the table.
   a) on
   b) above
   c) under
   d) in

6 Karin: No, it's not there either.
Karl: Maybe it fell ______ the stove and the refrigerator. Look there.
   a) on
   b) in
   c) under
   d) between

7 Karl: Did you find it?
Karin: Yes, but it wasn't ______ the refrigerator and the stove.
   a) in
   b) under
   c) between
   d) from

8 Karl: Where was it?
Karin: It wasn't ______ the refrigerator.
   a) at
   b) of
   c) for
   d) in

9 Karl: Was it ______ the table?
   a) to
   b) on
   c) at
   d) for
10 Karin: No, it was _____ my hand!
   a) from  
   b) for  
   c) into  
   d) in

**Exercise 4.** The preposition quiz:

1. I am …… work.
2. We are sitting …….the park. It is a nice day.
3. My car is parked……. the parking lot.
4. Our house is …….the end of the street.
5. My sister lives…….the 6th floor.
6. The books are ……..the bag.
7. The books are……….the table.
8. There are a lot of books ……the library.
9. I called their house, but nobody was …….home.
10. There is a beautiful picture …….the wall.
11. The clock fell…….floor. I have to pick it up.
12. Come sit ……. the table. It is time to eat.
13. There is a lot of food……. the refrigerator
14. The cookies are ……. the top shelf.
15. The computer is …….the table.

**Exercise 5.** Describe the picture using the suitable prepositions:

1. There are several pictures _____ the wall.
2. There are two pillows _____ the bed.
3. There's a towel hanging _____ the wall.
4. There's a towel hanging _____ a hook.
5. There's a chair _____ the bed and the table.
6. There's a jug _____ the table.
7. There are some coats _____ the bed.
8. You can see a light _____ the window.
9. There's a door _____ the left.
10. There's nothing _____ the bed.

**D. Prepositions of Direction**

Основными предлогами направления являются: **To, On (to), In (to)**

*To, into, and onto correspond respectively to the prepositions of location at, in, and on.*

**a. Основный предлог направления "to"**

*TO*: обозначает движение по направлению к какому-либо объекту

Robert returned **to** his apartment.

**b. The prepositions “onto”, “into”:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ON + TO = onto</th>
<th>обозначает движение по направлению к поверхности</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IN + TO = into</td>
<td>обозначает движение по направлению во что-либо</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4) The swimmer jumped **in/into** the pool.
5) Tom fell **on/onto** the floor.

6) The crab washed up **on/onto** the shore.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Выполнение какого-либо действия</th>
<th>Расположение объекта</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jean fell <strong>on(to)</strong> the floor.</td>
<td>Jean is <strong>on</strong> the floor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carol dived <strong>in(to)</strong> the water.</td>
<td>Carol is <strong>in</strong> the water.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"to" suggests movement toward a specific destination, while "toward" suggests movement in a general direction, without necessarily arriving at a destination.
Drive **toward** the city limits and turn north.

(Drive in the direction of the city limits; turnoff may be before arriving there.)

The plane was headed **toward** a mountain.

(It was headed in the direction of a mountain; it may not have reached or hit the mountain.)

Take me **to** the airport, please.

**1.** Предлог "**onto**" может быть заменён на предлог "**on**" с глаголами движения.

The sportsman jumped **on(to)** the mat.

Mark fell **on(to)** the floor.
Exercise 1. Complete the following sentences with the correct prepositions: to, toward, on, onto, in, or into. Some sentences may have more than one possible correct answer.

Remember that a few verbs of motion take only "on" rather than "onto."

1. Anna has returned ______ her home town.
2. The dog jumped ______ the lake.
3. Are the boys still swimming ______ the pool?
4. Thomas fell ______ the floor.
5. The plane landed ______ the runway.
6. We drove ______ the river for an hour, but turned north before we reached it.
7. The kids climbed ______ the monkey bars.
8. Joanna got ______ Fred's car.
9. The baby spilled his cereal ______ the floor.
10. We cried to the man on the ladder, "Hang ______!"
11. I just called ______ say I love you.
12. Matthew and Michelle moved the table ______ the dining room.
13. Allan left your keys ______ the table.
14. Dr. Karper apologized for interrupting us, and told us to carry ______ with our discussion.
15. I'd like ______ ask you a question.
16. Pat drove Mike ______ the airport.
17. Glenn almost fell ______ the river.
18. The waitress noticed that there was no more Diet Pepsi ______ Marty's glass.
19. Greg and Sarah took the bus that was heading ______ the university.
20. Mary Sue jumped ______ the stage and danced.

JOKE TIME

✓ Doctor: Did you drink your orange juice after your bath?
✓ Patient: After drinking the bath I didn’t have much room for the orange juice.
Exercise 2. Read the letter and insert the suitable prepositions of direction:

Dear Pamela,

Thanks for your letter. It is quite easy to find my house. When you get off the bus, start walking ____ the High Street ____ the church. ____ the way, you will pass a pub called The Queen and a telephone box. Just ____ the telephone box, ____ the left, there is a car park. Go ____ the car park and continue ____ the footpath that goes ____ Box Wood. Turn right ____ the signpost and walk ____ the river bank until you come ____ a bridge. Don’t go ____ the bridge but keep on walking until you reach a cottage called Hillside. ____ the cottage there is a narrow road that leads ____ a farm. Follow the road and turn left just before you reach the farm. ____ the end of this road there is a row of houses. I live ____ the middle house. It’s number 16 and has a lamppost ____ it. I hope you won’t get lost! I’m really looking forward to seeing you again. Lots of love,

Anna.

E. Prepositions of Spatial Relationship

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>above</th>
<th>Write your name above the line.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>над</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>across</th>
<th>Draw a line across the page.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>поперёк, через</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>against</th>
<th>She leans against the tree.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>прямо напротив, лицом к, перед чем-л.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ahead of</th>
<th>The girl is ahead of the boy.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>перед</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>along</th>
<th>There is lace along the edge of the cloth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>вдоль, по</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preposition</td>
<td>Translation (Russian)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>among</td>
<td>среди</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around</td>
<td>вокруг</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td>сзади, позади</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below</td>
<td>внизу, ниже</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beneath</td>
<td>внизу, ниже, под</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beside</td>
<td>рядом с, близ, около</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>между</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>от, из, с</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in front of</td>
<td>перед ч-л, к-л</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preposition</td>
<td>Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inside</strong></td>
<td>внутри, внутрь</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>nearby</strong></td>
<td>вблизи, около</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>off</strong></td>
<td>указывает на отдаление, удаление ч-л</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>out of</strong></td>
<td>вне, сверх, снаружи</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>through</strong></td>
<td>через</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>toward</strong></td>
<td>по направлению к</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>under</strong></td>
<td>под</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>within</strong></td>
<td>в, внутри</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Exercise 1** Complete the sentences with the following prepositions of location: *At, In, On*

1. Will you wait for me ____ the bus stop?
2. Jane is ____ her bedroom.
3. Daria's books are lying ____ the floor.
4. The girls didn't want to spend a long time ____ the carnival.
5. I let the cat sit ____ my lap, but then suddenly it jumped ____ my face!
6. Do you live ____ the city or ____ the country?
7. Trent arrived ____ the school building just in time.
8. The rancher built a fence to keep his cows ____ the pasture.
9. Kevin and Mack are out practicing ____ the football field.
10. The old house had so much grime ____ the windows that Bradley could hardly see inside.
11. The shepherd boy grazed his flock ____ the grassy hillside.
12. The audience threw tomatoes ____ the terrible comedian.
13. Wrestling isn't real; those guys ____ the ring are just pretending.
14. David works ____ the field of network administration, while Marty works ____ web design.
15. The car stalled and got stuck ____ the street.
16. Audrey lives ____ Third Street.
17. If William doesn't make any money on his book, he'll be out ____ the street.
18. I'll use my cellular phone when I'm ___ the bus, but never while I'm ____ the car.
19. Passengers are not allowed to use electronic devices ____ airplanes during takeoff and landing.

**Exercise 2** The preposition quiz:

1. We begin class_____8:30a.m.  ____ on  ____ at
2. Jin Hee's birthday is_____September.  ____ in  ____ at
3. She was born____September 4th.  ____ in  ____ on
4. Mike studies at the library____the afternoon.  ____ in  ____ at
5. Most people sleep______night.  ____ in  ____ at
6. Please, put the book ____ top of the table.  
7. Don't put you feet ____ your desk.  
8. Mary will pick you up ____ 6p.m. sharp.  
9. I saw Mary riding ____ your car yesterday.  
10. What were you doing ____ Bob's house yesterday?  

**JOKE TIME**

Teacher: Where are you from?  
Student: Germany  
Teacher: Which part?  
Student: All of me

**Exercise 3.** Match the pairs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. She is undergoing treatment …</th>
<th>a. … in wildlife</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. A bright student with an aptitude …</td>
<td>b. … of the theater manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Congratulation …</td>
<td>c. … into the causes of ageing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Scientists conduct research …</td>
<td>d. … for spaghetti carbonara.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. He has fallen in love …</td>
<td>e. … for learning foreign languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The Princess is heir …</td>
<td>f. … on your arms and shoulders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Coffee drinkers have a choice</td>
<td>g. … for a serious illness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Free tickets with the compliments …</td>
<td>h. … between black and white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Kenya is a country rich …</td>
<td>i. … to the Dutch throne.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10. It’s time for the kids to pay a visit …  
   \[ j. \text{ ... with the girl next door.} \]

11. The Italian chef gave me a recipe …  
   \[ k. \text{ on your Birthday!} \]

12. Working constantly at a computer puts a strain…  
   \[ l. \text{ ... to their grandparents.} \]

**Exercise 4.** Complete the proverbs below. Choose from the following prepositions – some may be used more than twice:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>against,</th>
<th>before,</th>
<th>between,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>from,</td>
<td>in,</td>
<td>into,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on,</td>
<td>out of,</td>
<td>up,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over,</td>
<td>with,</td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A bird **in** the hand is worth two **in** the bush.
2. It’s like banging your head **against** a brick wall.
3. **between** the devil and the deep blue sea.
4. To have a card **in** your sleeve.
5. To have several irons **in** fire.
6. An iron fist **against** a velvet glove.
7. It’s no use crying **over** spilt milk.
8. To keep the wolf **in** the door.
9. To kill two birds **between** one stone.
10. To make a mountain **against** a molehill.
11. **between** sight, **between** mind.
12. **between** frying pan and **between** the fire.
13. To put the cart **in** the horse.
14. The grass is always greener **between** the other side.
15. There’s no smoke **without** fire.
**Exercise 5.** Do the crosswords:

**Prepositions at the Crossword**

**Across**
1. Placed…the desk
5. …_ a friend
6. left …. noon
8. ….the night
10. ….the movie
13. ….. the stairs

**Down**
2. ran ….. the door
3. lives …. Dallas
4. go …. God
7. …. her goals
9. speaks highly …. you
11. going …. school
12. she's ….. school

---

**TEST**

**TASK I.** For each question, choose the single best answer:

1. My best friend lives _____ Springfield Road.
   a. in         b. on        c. at
2. I'll be ready to leave _____ about twenty minutes.
   a. in       b. on       c. at
3. Since he met his new girlfriend, Juan never seems to be _____ home.
   a. on       b. in       c. at
4. The child responded to his mother's demands _____ throwing a tantrum.
   a. with     b. by       c. from
5. I think she spent the entire afternoon _____ the phone.
   a. on       b. in       c. at
6. I will wait _____ 6:30, but then I'm going home.
   a. from     b. at       c. until
7. The police caught the thief _____ the corner of Cascade and Plum Streets.
   a. in       b. at       c. from
8. My fingers were injured so my sister had to write the note _____ me.
   a. for      b. with     c. to
9. I am not interested _____ buying a new car now.
   a. to       b. for      c. in
10. What are the main ingredients _____ this casserole?
    a. about    b. to       c. of
11. My best friend, John, is named _____ his great-grandfather.
    a. after    b. to       c. about
12. Grandpa stayed up _____ two in the morning.
    a. since    b. for      c. until
13. My parents have been married _____ forty-nine years.
    a. since    b. for      c. until
14. He usually travels to Philadelphia _____ train.
    a. by       b. at       c. with
15. You frequently see this kind of violence _____ television.
    a. with     b. in       c. on
16. I told Mom we'd be home _____ an hour or so.
    a. to       b. in       c. at
17. I was visiting my best friend _____ the hospital.
    a. of       b. at       c. in
18. The professor _____ South Africa amazed the American students with her stories.
    a. from     b. of       c. in
19. I'll see you _____ home when I get there.
    a. in       b. by       c. at
20. It's been snowing _____ Christmas morning.
    a. since    b. for      c. until
**TASK II.** Insert the necessary prepositions:

I’m Peter and I live … Germany. … summer I like to travel … Italy, because … the weather and the people there. Last spring I took a plane … Munich to Rome. … the airport we went to our hotel … bus. We stopped … a small restaurant for a quick meal. The driver parked the bus … the restaurant. Nobody could find the bus and the driver, so we waited … the restaurant … one hour. The driver was walking … the small park … the restaurant which we didn’t know. So we were angry … him. But my holidays were great. We sat … campfires and went dancing … the early mornings.

**TASK III.** Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions:

1. You can buy your rail passes …. the ticket counter … any train station … the country.
2. The brown bears found ….Kodiak Island are the largest …. the world.
3. There is no life … the moon, but there are many forms of life … the ocean floor.
4. She bought her wedding dress … an exclusive shop … Fifth Avenue.
5. Nathan was able to exchange money … the exchange counter … the airport.
6. If you want anything to eat, there is a freshly baked chocolate cake … the table … the kitchen and plenty of food … the refrigerator.
7. While Shirley was in Tacy's department store … the mall, she ran into Evan and Lea … the furniture department.
8. While Dave was … the top of the Eiffel Tower, he could see several tourist boats … the Seine, the river that runs through Paris.
9. I stood … line for thirty minutes … the ticket window … the movie theater to get tickets for the film.
10. Mike was sitting … his desk … his office … work when Bill called; Bill was … Asia on business.

**TASK IV.** Choose the right preposition:

1. We have DSL Internet access … work, but I don't have a high-speed connection…home.
2. The kids are learning about the Civil War … their history class … school.
3. Toby was … the hospital for two weeks after his motorcycle accident … the freeway.
4. Fred loves to go camping … the desert, but Kyle prefers to camp … the mountains.
5. The conference was held …a ski resort … Telluride, a small town … southwest Colorado.
6. You can buy stamps … the post office … Delancy Street.
7. The old man who was standing … the corner yelled at the kids who were playing … the street.
8. While they were hiking Ridgeback Mountain, Laura and Frank saw a bear in the woods.
9. They have a small house near a lake in the countryside. When I visit them, I always love to sit by the shore and watch the kids swimming in the lake.

**Task V.** Fill in the blanks with the prepositions where necessary:
1. She always gets up early in the morning, so she can make it to class on time.
2. I was sick, so I didn't go to work last Thursday, but I did go to work Friday.
3. Mary stopped talking in the middle of her story, and suddenly started to cry. I think we were all crying at the time she finished telling us what had happened.
4. Late at night, you can hear coyotes howling in the distance.
5. Just wait a second; I'll be there in a minute.
6. I need to give my parents a call. I haven't talked to them over a month.
7. Barbara is going to start her new job next September.
8. The professor said on the first day of the course that there would be a big final test at the end of the semester.
9. I have been sitting here more than an hour. If they don't arrive by the next ten minutes, I'm leaving.
10. We were really worried first because the banks were closed on Saturdays, so we couldn't exchange money. But by the end, everything worked out because we were able to exchange money at the hotel.
11. Her wallet wasn't in her purse; it was in her coat pocket.
12. Tony had an ink stain in his coat pocket.
13. Philip waited for the movie theater for Simone, so they could buy tickets and go in together.
14. While Sam was talking to the bank teller, the woman in line kept sighing impatiently.
15. There was a sign on the restaurant saying that it was closed for renovations.
16. His grandfather, who had passed away years before, was on the painting which was hanging on the wall.
17. Shelly didn't see Bobby because he was hiding behind the couch.
18. Frank had his passport in his hand as he boarded the plane.
19. There is an electrical outlet on the desk. Can you help me move the desk, so I can plug in the computer?
20. The kids were sitting on the floor when Barbara came home.

**Task VI.** Fill in the blanks with the correct preposition:
1. Donna went to the store, but I don't think she found what she was looking for because she came back almost immediately.
2. As Samantha was climbing the swimming pool, she slipped and fell back in the water.
3. The post office is just on the street on the left near the hospital.
4. Lily had problems climbing back to the tree house because she had injured her ankle as she was climbing.

5. She didn't have any difficulty pulling the parking space, but as she was backing she scratched the car parked next to her.

6. Although you can take an elevator to the top of the Eiffel Tower, we decided to walk... I was exhausted by the time we got to the top.

7. When Mrs. Sims saw the kids playing on the roof she screamed, "You kids had better come there, right now!"

8. You can go now; Dr. Wilson is ready to see you.

9. Our customer service center will help you solve that problem. Just walk the hall and take the elevator to the second floor.

10. Just as Debbie was stepping the elevator, she realized she was on the wrong floor, so she quickly jumped back before the doors closed.